Paul Eitel
612 E. Chestnut St.
Latin I

Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

Essentials of Latin for Beginners. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.

A School Latin Grammar. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. $1.00.

A First Latin Writer. M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.

Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. $1.00.

Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. $1.25.

Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University. $1.25.
Six Orations. $1.00.

Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.

Cicero. Cato Maior. Frank G. Moore, Columbia University. 80 cents.

Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia. Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.

Selections from Livy. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. $1.50.

Horace. Odes and Epodes. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. $1.50.

Horace. Satires. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. $1.00.

Horace. Satires and Epistles. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. $1.25.

Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare, Moore. **Satires and Epistles,** Morris. In one volume. $2.00.

Pliny's Letters. Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.

Tibullus. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.

Lucretius. William A. Merrill, University of California. $2.25.

Latin Literature of the Empire. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.
Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius $1.80
Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus $1.80

Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. $1.25.

Others to be announced later.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD

HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK

REVISED

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

COPYRIGHT, 1911, 1912, BY
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.
W P. 19

PREFACE

This book is designed primarily to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallic War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin:

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.

2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.

4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.

5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be

omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are selections from *Viri Romae* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, in simplified form. This should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms: Mr. H. F. Towle, Curtis High School, New York City; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY, January, 1905.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE present revision embodies some of the suggestions received from time to time from teachers who have used the Essentials. It has been undertaken, not to change the character or plan of the work, but solely to introduce such simplifications and amplifications as will make it still more helpful to the beginner. The statement of rules has in a number of instances been modified; a different arrangement has been given to the conjugations in the appendix; the introduction has been made somewhat fuller; and the order of Lessons 38 and 39 has been changed. In other respects the changes are internal and do not affect the method, scope, or paging.

All the changes made in this edition have been scrutinized and approved by Professor Charles Knapp of Columbia University, to whose keen scholarship and valuable aid the author is deeply indebted.

June, 1911. H. C. P.

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION	11
1.	First Declension or Stems in *-ā-*. Feminine Nouns	16
2.	First Declension or Stems in *-ā-* (continued). Feminine Adjectives	18
3.	First Declension or Stems in *-ā-* (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of *Sum*	20
4.	First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object	22
5.	Second Declension or Stems in *-o.* Masculine Nouns in *-us.* Masculine of Adjectives	25
6.	Second Declension (continued). Neuters in *-um.* Appositive. Indirect Object	28
7.	Declension of Adjectives in *-us, -a, -um.* Agreement	30
8.	Second Declension (continued). Masculines in *-er* and *-ir*	33
9.	Second Declension (continued). Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium.* Adjectives in *-er, -(e)ra, -(e)rum*	36
10.	Imperfect and Future Indicative of *Sum.* Order of Words. Review	40
11.	First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	42
12.	First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means	45
13.	First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review	48
14.	Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active	51
15.	Third Declension. Consonant Stems	54
16.	Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause	57
17.	Third Declension (continued). Stems in *-i-*	60
18.	Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When	63
19.	Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation	65
20.	Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent	68

LESSON		PAGE
21.	Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner	72
22.	Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	75
23.	Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Ablative of Specification	78
24.	Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives	81
25.	Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II	84
26.	Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of *Sum*. Review of the First and Second Conjugations	85
27.	Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive	87
28.	Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in *iō*	89
29.	Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English	92
30.	Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III	94
31.	*Is, Idem*	95
32.	The Relative Pronoun	98
33.	*Hic* and *Ille*. Adjectives used as Substantives	101
34.	*Ipse, Iste*. Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation	104
35.	Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative *Quis*	107
36.	Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV	110
37.	Fourth Declension	111
38.	Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possession	114
39.	Irregular Verb *Eō*. Place Where, Whence, Whither	116
40.	Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	120
41.	Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive	122
42.	Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V	125
43.	Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison	125
44.	Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference	128
45.	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. *Possum*	131
46.	Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	134
47.	Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI	137
48.	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	137
49.	Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service	141
50.	Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive	144
51.	Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings	147
52.	Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute	151

LESSON PAGE

53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII 154
54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings 155
55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements 157
56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with *Ūtor*, *Fruor*, etc. 161
57. *Ferō* and *Fīō*. Dative with Intransitives 163
58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII 165
59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose . 166
60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense. Result Clauses . 169
61. *Volō*, *Nōlō*, *Mālō*. Relative Clause of Purpose 172
62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses 174
63. Substantive Clauses 178
64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX 181
65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. *Cum* Temporal, Causal, and Concessive 182
66. Compounds of *Sum*. Dative with Compound Verbs 185
67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations 187
68. Gerund and Gerundive 190
69. Complete Review of Verb Forms 193
70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X 194

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time 196
72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time 198
73. Wishes 200
74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences 202
75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose 204
76. Periphrastic Conjugations 206

SELECTIONS FOR READING:

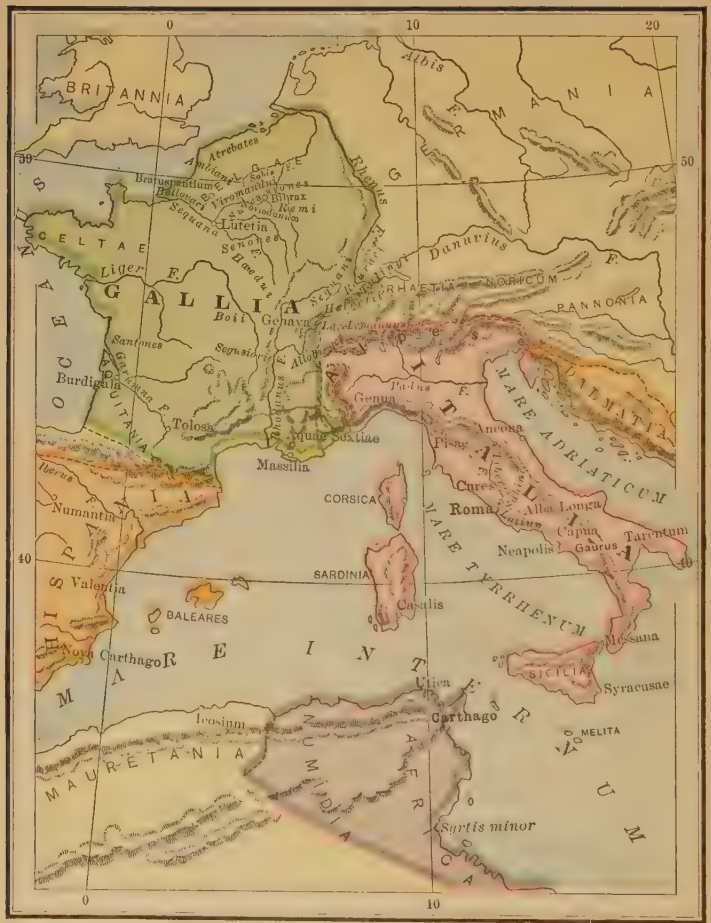
Selections from Roman History 209
Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters 1–20 218

APPENDIX. Tables of Inflections, Conjugation, etc., Summary of Rules of Syntax 230

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 271

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 303

INDEX 319



(10)

ITALY AND GAUL

SCALE OF MILES

0 100 200 300 400 500

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat them after the teacher. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

Alphabet

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable, as in **iūnior**.

3. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants.

4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one sound. They are

ae oe au eu ui

Pronunciation

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows:

ā like *a* in *father*. ī like *i* in *machine*.
ē like *e* in *prey*. ō like *o* in *note*.
ū like *oo* in *root*.

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows:

a like the first *a* in *ahá*. **i** like *i* in *pit*.
e like *e* in *step*. **o** like *o* in *or*.
u like *u* in *pull*.

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *come* and *go*.
i consonant is like *y* in *yes*.
t is always hard, as in *tin*.
v is like *w* in *wine*.
s is a hissing sound, as in *sin;* never like *z* as in *ease*.
ch is like *ch* in *chorus*.
ph is like *ph* in *alphabet*.
qu is almost like *kw*.

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.
oe like *oi* in *toil*.
ui is almost like *we*.
au like *ou* in *house*.
eu (rare) like *éh-oo*.
ei (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.

9. Pronounce carefully the following words:

hī	iam	tot	mē	genus	-que	cui
ad	vīs	sīc	quia	coepit	vir	aeger
ita	quis	haec	causa	rēgnō	mēnsae	

Syllables

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong alone or with one or more consonants, preceding or following. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: **ae-dí-fi-cō**, *I build.*

11. Except in compound words (see 13), a single consonant between vowels or diphthongs should be joined with the second vowel: **a-mí-cus**, *friend*, **dí-xit**, *he said.*

12. If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is before the last consonant, except that **l** or **r** with the consonant immediately preceding is joined to the second vowel: **hós-pes**, *guest*, **díc-tus**, *said*, **sánc-tus**, *holy*, **cás-tra**, *camp*, **dē-mónstrō**, *I point out*, **cōg-nós-cō**, *I recognize*, **pú-bli-cus**, *public.*

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ád-est** (**ad**, *near;* **est**, *he is*), *he is present.*

14. Doubled consonants are separated: **pu-él-la**, *girl.*

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

Quantity

16. Vowels are long (-) or short (⏑). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels:

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**: **cŏ-pĭ-a**, *abundance.*
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long: **cō-gō** (**cŏăgō**), *I collect.*
3. Vowels are long before **nf, ns, nct, ncs**: **īnferō**, *I bring in;* **īnsānus**, *mad.*
4. Diphthongs are long: **caūsa**, *cause.*

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature: **lē-gēs**, *laws;* **ae-dēs**, *temple.*

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x** or **z**, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short: **vocant**, *they call;* **dux**, *leader.*

Accent

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice (accent):

1. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult: **témplum**, *temple.*

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, by nature or position, otherwise the antepenult: **amáre**, *to love;* **míttere**, *to send.*

4. Certain words like **-ne**, the sign of a question, and **-que**, *and*, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that they are pronounced with it; the last syllable of the first word has an accent: **amátne**, *does he love?* **hóminésque**, *and the men.*

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

inīquus	vincam	aedificium	gladiō
grātiae	fīlius	coepērunt	cuius
huic	īdem	fīliusque	quae
monēre	vērō	mēnsārum	faciēbam
facere	aegritūdō	pugnābō	laudābimus

Inflection

22. **Parts of Speech.** — These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.** — This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension;* that of verbs, *conjugation.*

24. **Declension.** — Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases, which are shown by means of case endings:

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive.* It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of.*

3. *Dative.* This corresponds sometimes to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.[1]
6. *Ablative.* This expresses various adverbial relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are best distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

25. **Stem and Base.** — The stem is the form which gives in a general way the meaning of the word. The final letter of the stem, called the stem characteristic, often disappears or is changed before case endings. It is always found in the genitive plural, except that o of -o-stems is lengthened. The base (that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the case endings are added directly) is formed by dropping the stem characteristic or by omitting the ending of the genitive singular.

26. **Conjugation.** — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

[1] Except in the singular of nouns in -us of the second declension, the vocative case is like the nominative. It is therefore not given in the paradigms except in the second declension.

Gender

27. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

In names of persons only, the gender is based, as in English, on sex (Natural Gender). In all other classes of words the gender is determined by the signification of the noun or by the ending of the nominative (Grammatical Gender).

28. **General Rules of Gender.**

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: **nauta**, *sailor;* **Tiberis**, *the Tiber;* **Caesar**, *Caesar;* **aquilō**, *north wind;* **Iānuārius**, *January.*
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: **fīlia**, *daughter;* **Ītalia**, *Italy;* **Athēnae**, *Athens;* **pirus**, *pear tree.*
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: **nihil**, *nothing.*

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

Feminine and Masculine Nouns

29. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

Stem[1] **stellā.** Base[1] **stell-.**

	Singular	Case Endings
Nom.	stella, *a star* (as subject)[2]	-a
Gen.	stellae, *of a star*, or *star's*	-ae
Dat.	stellae, *to* or *for a star*	-ae
Acc.	stellam, *star*, or *a star* (as object)	-am
Abl.	stellā, *from, with, by a star*	-ā

[1] See 25. [2] There is no article in Latin. Consequently **stella** may mean *star*, *the star*, or *a star*.

	Plural	Case Endings
Nom.	stell**ae**, *stars* (as subject)	-ae
Gen.	stell**ārum**, *of stars*, or *stars'*	-ārum
Dat.	stell**īs**, *to* or *for stars*	-īs
Acc.	stell**ās**, *stars* (as object)	-ās
Abl.	stell**īs**, *from*, *with*, *by stars*	-īs

Note carefully

1. That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
2. That the dative and ablative plural are alike.
3. That the **-a** of the ablative singular is long.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like **stella**:

Nouns

puella, ae, f., *girl.*
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen.*
stella, ae, f., *star.*
porta, ae, f., *gate.*
rosa, ae, f., *rose.*
via, ae, f., *road*, *way*, *street.*
silva, ae, f., *forest.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*

31. EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

I. 1. Puellārum. 2. Portīs. 3. Viā. 4. Rosīs. 5. Silvam. 6. Stellīs. 7. Rēgīnae. 8. Viīs. 9. Portae. 10. Stellās. 11. Viārum. 12. Rosa rēgīnae. 13. Viās silvārum.

II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests. 4. The rose of the queen. 5. By the streets. 6. Of the stars. 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the girls.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rosa pulchra, *pretty rose*

Stem **rosā- pulchrā-**
Base **ros- pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	**rosa** pulchra, *a pretty rose*
GEN.	rosae pulchrae, *of a pretty rose*
DAT.	rosae pulchrae, *to* or *for a pretty rose*
ACC.	**rosam** pulchram, *a pretty rose*
ABL.	rosā pulchrā, *from, with, by a pretty rose*

PLURAL

NOM.	**rosae** pulchrae, *pretty roses*
GEN.	**rosārum** pulchrārum, *of pretty roses*
DAT.	rosīs pulchrīs, *to* or *for pretty roses*
ACC.	**rosās** pulchrās, *pretty roses*
ABL.	rosīs pulchrīs, *from, with, by pretty roses*

Observe that the adjective and the noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together: **via lāta**, *the wide road;* **puella parva**, *the little girl.*

33. Examine the following:

1. **Rosa pulchra est**, *the rose* is *pretty.*
2. **Rosae pulchrae sunt**, *the roses* are *pretty.*

Note in these sentences

a. That the subjects **rosa** and **rosae** are in the nominative case.

b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular, and plural, when the subject is plural.

c. That the predicate adjectives **pulchra** and **pulchrae** agree with the subject in number, gender, and case.

34. Rules of Syntax.

1. **Subject.** — *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*

2. **Predicate Agreement.** — *A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case.*

35. VOCABULARY

Nouns	Adjectives
fābula, ae, f., *story.*	**bona**, *good.*
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*	**lāta**, *broad, wide.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*	**longa**, *long.*
terra, ae, f., *land, country.*	**magna**, *large, great.*
	pulchra, *beautiful, pretty.*

Verbs	Adverbs
est, (*he, she, it*) *is, there is.*	**ubi**, *where, when.*
sunt, (*they*) *are, there are.*	**nōn**, *not.*

Conjunction

et, *and.*

36. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābulae longae sunt. 2. Terra est lāta et pulchra. 3. Ubi est pulchra īnsula? 4. Lūna est pulchra. 5. Bonae sagittae sunt longae. 6. Nōn est pulchra. 7. Magnae sunt īnsulae. 8. Lātīs terrīs. 9. Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae. 10. Via est lāta. 11. Ubi sunt īnsulae magnae? 12. Sagittārum longārum.

II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It[1] is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. It is a good story.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**

37. Examine the following:

1. **Rosa puellae alba est,** *the rose of the girl is white*, or *the girl's rose is white.*
2. **Rosae puellārum albae sunt,** *the roses of the girls are white*, or *the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rosa**: not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rosae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. RULE. — **The Genitive.** — *The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB **sum**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	**sum,** *I am*	**sumus,** *we are*
2D PER.	**es,** *you are* (*thou art*)	**estis,** *you are*
3D PER.	**est,** (*he, she, it*) *is, there is*	**sunt,** *they are, there are*

[1] *It is,* **est.**

40. Examine the following:

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, *the woman is beautiful.*

QUESTIONS

1. **Estne fēmina pulchra?** *is the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes or No.)
2. **Nōnne fēmina pulchra est?** *is not the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes.)
3. **Ubi est fēmina?** *where is the woman?*

Observe

1. That in simple questions that may be answered by either yes or no, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word, which usually stands first.
2. That questions expecting the answer yes, are introduced by **nōnne**.
3. That **-ne** is not used if the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb (**quī**, *who*, **ubi**, *where*, **cūr**, *why*, etc.).

41. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance* (pl., *troops, forces*).
fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
patria, ae, f., *native land, country.*
Graecia, ae, f., *Greece.*
Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
fīlia,[1] ae, f., *daughter.*

ADJECTIVES

nova, *new.*
parva, *small.*
mea, *my, mine.*
tua, *your, yours* (referring to one person only).

ADVERB

semper, *always, ever.*

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

[1] **Fīlia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, have the ending **-ābus**, not **-īs**, in the dative and ablative plural: **fīliābus, deābus.**

42. EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōnne sunt parvae fīliae? 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vīta fēminae. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiae rēgīnae nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgīna tuae patriae pulchra est. 10. Cōpiae patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae. 11. Rēgīnārum rosae sunt pulchrae. 12. Semperne novae lūnae pulchrae sunt? 13. Ubi sunt rēgīnārum cōpiae? 14. Fēminae Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. Is it not a pretty country?

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT OBJECT

43. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **amō**

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS[1]
1ST PER.	**amō**, *I love, am loving, do love*	**-ō** (or **-m**), *I*
2D PER.	**amās**, *you love, are loving, do love*	**-s**, *you* (or *thou*)
3D PER.	**amat**, *he loves, is loving, does love*	**-t**, *he, she, it*

	PLURAL	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1ST PER.	**amāmus**, *we love, are loving, do love*	**-mus**, *we*
2D PER.	**amātis**, *you love, are loving, do love*	**-tis**, *you*
3D PER.	**amant**, *they love, are loving, do love*	**-nt**, *they*

[1] These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.

Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem **amā-**, the final vowel of which is lost before **-ō** in the first person singular, and is shortened before **-t, -nt.**
2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated clearly by the *ending*, without the use of a pronoun.

44. Like **amō**, conjugate the present indicative of

pugnō, *I fight*	**culpō**, *I blame*
vocō, *I call*	**laudō**, *I praise*

45. Carefully examine the following:

1. **Rēgīna nautam laudat**, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. **Rēgīnae nautam laudant**, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. **Nautam laudant**, *they praise the sailor.*
4. **Nautam laudāmus**, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That, when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That, when a noun is not the subject, the subject need not be expressed by a separate word. In English, however, we must use a pronoun.
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. Rules of Syntax.

1. **Agreement of Verb.** — *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

2. **Direct Object.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47. VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m.,[1] *farmer.*
nauta, ae, m.,[1] *sailor.*
Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack, want.*
fīda, *faithful.*
superba, *proud, haughty.*
amō, *I love, I like.*
pugnō, *I fight.*
vocō, *I call.*
culpō, *I blame.*
laudō, *I praise.*
cūr, adv., *why?*
in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*[2]

48. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Graeciae īnsulae sunt parvae. 2. Pecūniā meā. 3. Suntne cōpiae patriae tuae magnae? 4. Fēminae fīliae nōn semper bonae sunt. 5. Est cōpia pecūniae. 6. Pulchrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. Estne fābula nova?

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen, where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus. 2. Vocās; vocantne? vocātisne? 3. Cūr agricolās culpāmus? 4. In Ītaliā inopia est pecūniae. 5. Laudantne nautās? 6. Superbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. Rēgīnae nautās nōn laudāmus. 8. Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae. 9. Ubi sunt agricolārum fīliae? 10. Cūr nautam culpat? 11. Rosae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā. 12. Agricolae inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.

[1] A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 28, 1.

[2] **In** is used with the ablative only when the verb expresses no idea of motion toward a place. **Sunt in Eurōpā,** *they are in Europe.* **Pugnant in silvīs,** *they are fighting in the forest.*

2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There[1] are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor? 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50. **dominus**, m., *master, lord*

Stem **domino-**[2]
Base **domin-**

	Singular	Case Endings
Nom.	dominus, *master*	**-us**
Gen.	dominī, *of the master*	**-ī**
Dat.	dominō, *to* or *for the master*	**-ō**
Acc.	dominum, *master*	**-um**
Voc.[3]	domine, (*O*) *master*	**-e**
Abl.	dominō, *from, with, by the master*	**-ō**
	Plural	
Nom.	dominī, *masters*	**-ī**
Gen.	dominōrum, *of the masters*	**-ōrum**
Dat.	dominīs, *to* or *for the masters*	**-īs**
Acc.	dominōs, *masters*	**-ōs**
Voc.	dominī, (*O*) *masters*	**-ī**
Abl.	dominīs, *from, with, by the masters*	**-īs**

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in **-us** is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in **-us**.

[1] *There are*, **sunt**; also *it is*, **est**. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way.

[2] See **25**. [3] See **24**, 5, footnote.

dominus bonus, *good master*

	SINGULAR	
NOM.	**dominus bonus**	*good master*
GEN.	**dominī bonī**	*of the good master*
DAT.	**dominō bonō**	*to* or *for the good master*
ACC.	**dominum bonum**	*good master*
VOC.	**domine bone**	(*O*) *good master*
ABL.	**dominō bonō**	*from, with, by the good master*

	PLURAL	
NOM.	**dominī bonī**	*good masters*
GEN.	**dominōrum bonōrum**	*of the good masters*
DAT.	**dominīs bonīs**	*to* or *for the good masters*
ACC.	**dominōs bonōs**	*good masters*
VOC.	**dominī bonī**	(*O*) *good masters*
ABL.	**dominīs bonīs**	*from, with, by the good masters*

52. 1. What case endings of this declension are alike? Which are the same as the first declension endings?

2. The base is obtained by dropping the **-ī** of the genitive singular: genitive, **dominī**, base **domin-**.

3. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53. VOCABULARY

amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*
cibus, ī, m., *food.*
dominus, ī, m., *master, lord.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
hortus, ī, m., *garden.*
servus, ī, m., *slave.*
sed, conj., *but.*
magnus, *great, large.*
bonus, *good.*
malus, *bad, evil.*
parvus, *small.*
superbus, *proud, haughty.*
fīdus, *faithful.*
dēlectō, *I delight, I please.*
servō, *I keep, I preserve, I save.*

54. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam? 3. Ubi nautae pugnant? 4. Nautae in viā pugnant. 5. Fīliam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper laudant.

II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country? 2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is the sailor's money?

55. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominō; amīcōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; dominī superbī; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae. 4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fīdum servum laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae fīlia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibum dominō servant. 9. Culpāsne, amīce,[1] dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr fīdī equī dominōs dēlectant?

II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves. 2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is in the garden. 4. He blames his[2] faithful horse. 5. The garden is large, but not good. 6. Good food pleases the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

[1] The vocative in Latin seldom comes first in the sentence.

[2] Omit. The possessives in Latin are frequently omitted, when they are not emphatic or are not needed for the sake of clearness.

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN -um. APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. **dōnum**, *gift* **dōnum grātum**, *acceptable gift*

Stem **dōno-**	Stem **dōno-, grāto-**
Base **dōn-**	Base **dōn-, grāt-**

SINGULAR	SINGULAR
NOM. dōnum, *gift*	NOM. dōnum grātum
GEN. dōnī, *of the gift*	GEN. dōnī grātī
DAT. dōnō, *to* or *for the gift*	DAT. dōnō grātō
ACC. dōnum, *gift* [*gift*	ACC. dōnum grātum
ABL. dōnō, *from, with, by the*	ABL. dōnō grātō
PLURAL	**PLURAL**
NOM. dōna, *gifts*	NOM. dōna grāta
GEN. dōnōrum, *of the gifts*	GEN. dōnōrum grātōrum
DAT. dōnīs, *to* or *for the gifts*	DAT. dōnīs grātīs
ACC. dōna, *gifts* [*gifts*	ACC. dōna grāta
ABL. dōnīs, *from, with, by the*	ABL. dōnīs grātīs

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following:

1. **Mārcus agricola fīliae equum dat**, *Marcus, the farmer, gives* (*his*) *daughter a horse*, OR *gives a horse to* (*his*) *daughter.*
2. **Mārcō amīcō cibum dō**, *I give Marcus* (*my*) *friend food*, OR *I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amīcō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, *c*, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **fīliae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Apposition.** — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains.*

2. **Indirect Object.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

59. VOCABULARY

bellum, ī, n., *war.*
dōnum, ī, n., *gift.*
oppidum, ī, n., *town.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain.*
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
in, prep. with acc.,[1] *into, to, against;* with abl., *in, on, over.*
Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus.*
incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*
Rōmānus, ī, m., *Roman.*
grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing* (followed by dat.).
dō, *I give.*
portō, *I carry.*

60. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Malum servum culpāmus. 2. Laudantne dominī superbī servōs fīdōs? 3. Equī dominī sunt in magnō hortō.

[1] See 47, footnote 2. The accusative is used with **in** when the verb expresses motion into, toward, or against (some place, person, etc.). **Vīnum in oppidum portat,** *he is carrying wine into the town.*

4. Ubi servī cibum dominōrum servant? 5. Agricolae fīdōs equōs nōn semper laudant. 6. Est cibus in dominī hortō. 7. Fēmina amīcī fīliam vocat.

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the slaves. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61. EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidīs; bella; vīnō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fīdus. 3. Incolīs vīnum damus. 4. Bellum Rōmānīs grātum est. 5. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus, agricolārum amīcus, Rōmānus est. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentum portant. 8. Fīliae rēgīnae in hortō sunt. 9. Vīnum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōna incolīs oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vīnum servīs datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum et vīnum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good master. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the haughty Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry grain into the town. 7. There is good grain in the town.

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

	Singular		
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
	Plural		
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Decline together **amīcus fīdus**, *faithful friend;* **puella parva**, *little girl;* **oppidum magnum**, *large town.*

63. Examine the following:

1. **Amīcus est fīdus**, *the friend is faithful.*
2. **Agricolae sunt validī**, *the farmers are sturdy.*
3. **Puellae sunt parvae**, *the girls are small.*
4. **Nautās superbōs nōn amāmus**, *we do not like proud sailors.*

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.

b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings. Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together **nauta bonus**, *the good sailor*; **pōculum magnum**, *the large cup*; **agricola validus**, *the strong farmer*.

65. RULE. — **Agreement of Adjectives.** — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66. VOCABULARY

malus, a, um, *bad, evil, wicked.*
magnus, a, um, *great, large.*
parvus, a, um, *small.*
meus, a, um, *my, mine.*
tuus, a, um, *your, yours.*
grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing.*
albus, a, um, *white.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
perītus, a, um, *skillful.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
lātus, a, um, *wide, broad.*
novus, a, um, *new.*
fīdus, a, um, *faithful, loyal.*
superbus, a, um, *proud, haughty.*
validus, a, um, *strong, sturdy.*
convocō, *I call together, I summon.*
hodiē, adv., *to-day.*
nunc, adv., *now.*

67. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Fīliae equīs cibum dant. 2. Inopia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta. 3. Vocātisne incolās Galliae? 4. Ubi Rōmānī pugnant? 5. Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant. 6. Nauta Mārcō agricolae bonum vīnum dat.

II. 1. The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter. 2. The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, is in the town. 3. They give the women money. 4. He is carrying grain into the town.

68. EXERCISES

I. 1. Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant. 2. Ubi est hodiē nauta perītus? 3. In oppidō nunc est nauta. 4. Dōna meīs amīcīs sunt semper grāta. 5. Equum

agricolae validō fēminae dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea fīlia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodiē perītōs agricolās nōn culpāmus. 10. Dōna rēgīnae incolās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocās?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are loyal inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

69. **Paradigms**

	puer, *boy*	**ager**, *field*	**vir**, *man*
	Stem **puero-**	Stem **agro-**	Stem **viro-**
	Base **puer-**	Base **agr-**	Base **vir-**
		SINGULAR	
NOM.	puer	ager	vir
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō
		PLURAL	
NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

1. Are the case endings the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 24, 5, footnote.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no **e** before **r**.

70. Only a very few nouns are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension in **-er** are declined like **ager**.

Like **ager** decline **liber**, *book*.

Like the plural of **puer** decline **līberī**, *children*.

71. VOCABULARY

liber, librī, m., *book*.
līberī, līberōrum, m. (plur.), *children*.
magister, magistrī, m., *teacher*.
ager, agrī, m., *field*.
Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul*.
vir, virī, m., *man*.
puer, puerī, m., *boy*.
discipulus, ī, m., *pupil*.
multus, a, um, *much;* plur., *many*.

72. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmentī est in Galliā. 2. Incolīs oppidī magnī equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vīta Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram īnsulam frūmentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many[1] sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

[1] *Many sturdy = many and sturdy.*

are summoning many troops into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73. EXERCISES

I. 1. Multī librī sunt in oppidō. 2. Virī puellās et puerōs laudant. 3. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 4. Liber meō discipulō est grātus. 5. Rēgīna līberōs in oppidum convocat. 6. Discipulī magistrī amīcum laudant. 7. Multī agricolae nunc in agrō sunt. 8. Fīlia mea līberōs magistrī laudat. 9. Incolārum agrī sunt lātī. 10. Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpat. 11. Ubi nunc sunt fīliae meae librī? 12. Equī multōs virōs in silvam portant.

A Roman School

II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her teacher. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the slaves into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**, (**-e**)**ra**, (**-e**)**rum**

74.

	fīlius, *son*	**proelium**, *battle*
	Stem **fīlio-**	Stem **proelio-**
	Base **fīli-**	Base **proeli-**
	SINGULAR	
NOM.	**fīlius**	**proelium**
GEN.	**fīlī** (**fīliī**)	**proelī** (**proeliī**)
DAT.	**fīliō**	**proeliō**
ACC.	**fīlium**	**proelium**
VOC.	**fīlī**	**proelium**
ABL.	**fīliō**	**proeliō**
	PLURAL	
NOM.	**fīliī**	**proelia**
GEN.	**fīliōrum**	**proeliōrum**
DAT.	**fīliīs**	**proeliīs**
ACC.	**fīliōs**	**proelia**
VOC.	**fīliī**	**proelia**
ABL.	**fīliīs**	**proeliīs**

1. The genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally ends in **-ī** (not **-iī**). The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōnsílium**, *plan;* (gen.) **cōnsílī**.[1]

2. In proper names in **-ius** and **fīlius**, the vocative singular ends in **-ī**: **fīlī**, (*O*) *son;* **Mercurius**, (voc.) **Mercúrī**,[1] (*O*) *Mercury*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.

3. Do these nouns differ in any other way from those in Lesson 5?

[1] In such forms the penult is accented, even though short. Contrast 20, 3.

75. **līber**, *free*

Stem **lībero-**
Base **līber-**

SINGULAR

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	līber	līber**a**	līber**um**
GEN.	līber**ī**	līber**ae**	līber**ī**
DAT.	līber**ō**	līber**ae**	līber**ō**

etc.

pulcher, *beautiful*

Stem **pulchro-**
Base **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	**pulcher**	pulchr**a**	pulchr**um**
GEN.	pulchr**ī**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**ī**
DAT.	pulchr**ō**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**ō**

etc.

1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us, -a, -um** are declined in the masculine like **dominus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er, -era, -erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er, -ra, -rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (29) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
līberī, līberōrum, m. (plur.), *children*
liber, librī, m., *book.*

Roman Book

77. Summary of Nouns of First and Second Declensions

First Declension

Nom. Sing. Endings	*Gender*
-a	Feminine (Except names of males, 27, 28)

Second Declension

-us, **-ius**, **-er**, **-ir**	Masculine
-um, **-ium**	Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular **not** like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? in that of the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in **-er** that have **e** before the **r** of the base.

78. VOCABULARY

fīlius, fīlī, m., *son.*
nūntius, ī, m., *messenger.*
gladius, ī, m., *sword.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful, pretty.*
tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender, delicate, dainty.*
aedificium, ī, n., *building.*
proelium, proelī, n., *battle.*
miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, poor.*
asper, aspera, asperum, *rough, fierce.*
niger, nigra, nigrum, *black.*
piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow, lazy.*

79. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. In agrō Mārcī amīcī sunt multī equī. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistrī, puerum dēlectat. 3. Multī agricolae magnōs equōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Ītaliae? 5. Puerōs fīdōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiī līberōs in oppidum convocant?

II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā pulchra sunt. 2. Ubi tuī, fīlī, librī sunt? 3. Nūntiōrum sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī multōs gladiōs in aedificium portant. 5. Rosae multae et tenerae in asperā silvā sunt. 6. Agricolae miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna meī amīcī fīliīs et fīliābus grāta sunt. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpat?

10. Nūntī fīliō multōs librōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae līberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multī gladiī.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Marcus,[1] are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF **sum**. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of **sum** are conjugated as follows:

IMPERFECT	FUTURE
SINGULAR	
1. eram, *I was*	1. erō, *I shall be*
2. erās, *you were*	2. eris, *you will be*
3. erat, *he was, there was*	3. erit, *he will be, there will be*
PLURAL	
1. erāmus, *we were*	1. erimus, *we shall be*
2. erātis, *you were*	2. eritis, *you will be*
3. erant, *they were, there were*	3. erunt, *they will be, there will be*

1. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular? See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of **sum**?

82. **Order of Words.** — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order

[1] Be careful as to the position of this word. See page 27, footnote 1.

may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.
The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not usually change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example:

1. **Caesar agricolās fīdōs laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. **Caesar fīdōs agricolās laudat**, *Caesar praises the* loyal *farmers.*
3. **Agricolās fīdōs laudat Caesar**, Caesar *praises* the loyal farmers.

The first sentence shows the normal[1] order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show. In the second sentence **fīdōs** is more emphatic than in the first. In the third **agricolās fīdōs** and **Caesar** are emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., **vīta**, *vital;* **nauta**, *nautical.* Also watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., **ager**, *field;* **agricola**, *farmer. Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.*

[1] The normal order of a Latin sentence is (1) subject with modifiers, (2) indirect object with modifiers, (3) direct object with modifiers, (4) adverb, (5) verb. But this normal order very often gives way to considerations of emphasis or clearness.

incola	gladius	agricola	lūna	aedificium
discipulus	vir	patria	porta	frūmentum
vīnum	ager	cōpia	fābula	oppidum
sagitta	fēmina	vīta	īnsula	dōnum
proelium	nūntius	pecūnia	amīcus	bellum
puer	hortus	terra	dominus	magister
via	silva	rēgīna	servus	liber
rosa	inopia	stella	fīlia	
cibus	nauta	equus	fīlius	

84. EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis: eritis; estis. 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Fīliī agricolae erant parvī. 6. Fīlia nūntī erat in īnsulā pulchrā. 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn erant pigrī. 9. Ubi gladius meī amīcī erat? 10. In magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were; he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON 11

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 26 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the -re of the present infinitive active. Thus:

Conjugation	Present Active Infinitive	Distinguishing Vowel
I.	**amāre**, *to love*	**ā**
II.	**monēre**, *to advise*	**ē**
III.	**regere**, *to rule*	**e**
IV.	**audīre**, *to hear*	**ī**

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Part.
amō	**amā|re**	**amāv|ī**	**amāt|us**
I love	*to love*	*I have loved*	*loved*
	present stem	perfect stem	participial stem

87. **Paradigm**

Imperfect Indicative Active

Singular

1. **amābam**, *I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. **amābās**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābat**, *he was loving, loved, did love*

Plural

1. **amābāmus**, *we were loving, loved, did love*
2. **amābātis**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābant**, *they were loving, loved, did love*

Future Indicative Active

Singular	Plural
1. **amābō**, *I shall love*	1. **amābimus**, *we shall love*
2. **amābis**, *you will love*	2. **amābitis**, *you will love*
3. **amābit**, *he will love*	3. **amābunt**, *they will love*

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem **amā-** imperf., **amā-bam**
amō pres. stem **amā-** fut., **amā-bō**

2. That the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs:

parō, *prepare*, **parāre, parāvī, parātus**
laudō, *praise*, **laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus**
culpō, *blame*, **culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus**
convocō, *summon*, **convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus**

89. VOCABULARY

locus, ī, m., plur., **locī**, m., and **loca**, n., *place*.
praemium, ī, n., *reward*.
pīlum, ī, n., *javelin*.
saxum, ī, n., *rock*.
tēlum, ī, n., *weapon*.
castra, ōrum, n. (plur.), *camp*.
idōneus, a, um, *fit*, *suitable*.
parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prepare*.
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *provide*, *get* (*bring*) *together*.
contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.
hasta, ae, f., *spear*.

90. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī fīliābus agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Cūr fīdum nautam culpātis? 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In silvam nūntiōs convocat. 5. Inopia cibī et vīnī virōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Multī gladiī semper in oppidō sunt.

II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91. EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat; laudābant; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus; comparābās; dabunt. 3. Portābimus; culpābitis; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs parābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis? 8. Ubi est locus castrīs idōneus? 9. Fīlī praemium erit pulchrum pīlum. 10. Idōneās hastās virīs dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pīla sunt in castrīs. 12. Gallī bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give; they gave; she was giving. 2. We praised; he will blame; we are summoning. 3. They will carry; we shall give; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92. **Paradigm**

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **amō**, *I love*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL
1. amāvī, *I have loved, I loved, I did love*	**-ī**
2. amāvistī, *you have loved*, etc.	**-istī**
3. amāvit, *he has loved*, etc.	**-it**
PLURAL	
1. amāvimus, *we have loved*, etc.	**-imus**
2. amāvistis, *you have loved*, etc.	**-istis**
3. amāvērunt, or amāvēre,[1] *they have loved*, etc.	**-ērunt**(**-ēre**[1])

[1] This form is rare. Always use the forms in **-ērunt**.

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or state (condition) *completed* by or at the present time, the imperfect an act or state *going on, repeated,* or *continued* in past time.

3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following:

1. **Hastīs et sagittīs pugnābant,** *they fought with spears and arrows.*

2. **Equīs frūmentum portābimus,** *we shall bring grain by-means-of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives **hastīs, sagittīs, equīs** express the *means* or *instrument,* the things with or by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. RULE. — **Ablative of Means or Instrument.** — *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95. VOCABULARY

lēgātus, ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*
Graecus, ī, m., *a Greek.*
paucī, ae, a, *few, a few.*
superō, āre, āvī, ātus, *surpass, conquer, overcome.*
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm, equip.*
dō, dare, dedī,[1] **datus,** *give.*
oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attack, besiege.*
arma, ōrum, n. (plur.), *arms, weapons.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. (plur.), *winter quarters.*
Helvētius, ī, m., *a Helvetian.*

[1] Note the irregular perfect.

96. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominus meus dōna fīliābus dabit. 2. Nautae fidī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servī pigrī multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

97. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnāvistī; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētiī oppidum saxīs et armīs oppugnābant. 4. Equīs in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Pauca arma virīs dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmānī Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Servī multum frūmentum in hīberna portāvērunt. 8. Rōmānī Helvētiōrum oppida sagittīs et pīlīs oppugnābant. 9. Incolās īnsulae tēlīs armābimus. 10. In hībernīs sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastīs et sagittīs superāvit. 12. Locus hībernīs idōneus est.

II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By-means-of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.

Pīlum

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **amō**, *I love*

SINGULAR

1. **amāveram**, *I had loved*
2. **amāverās**, *you had loved*
3. **amāverat**, *he had loved*

PLURAL

1. **amāverāmus**, *we had loved*
2. **amāverātis**, *you had loved*
3. **amāverant**, *they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amāverō**, *I shall have loved*
2. **amāveris**, *you will have loved*
3. **amāverit**, *he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. **amāverimus**, *we shall have loved*
2. **amāveritis**, *you will have loved*
3. **amāverint**, *they will have loved*

1. The pluperfect is formed by the combination of the perfect stem **amāv-** and **-eram**; the future perfect by the combination of the same stem and **-erō**. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present Tense,	First one of the principal parts.
Imperfect Tense,	Present stem + **bam.**
Future Tense,	Present stem + **bō.**
Perfect Tense,	Third one of the principal parts.
Pluperfect Tense,	Perfect stem + **eram.**
Future Perfect Tense,	Perfect stem + **erō.**

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies:

laudō	vocō	parō	oppugnō	servō
culpō	convocō	dō	portō	superō

1. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101. VOCABULARY

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum,[1] *hasten* (usually with an infinitive; never followed by **ad** and the acc.).

expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *capture, take by storm.*

mox, adv., *soon.*

ferus, a, um, *wild, barbarous.*

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* (plur.), *baggage.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, near.*

[1] The masculine form of the perfect participle is usually found only with transitive verbs. With other verbs the form in **-um,** or the future active participle in **-ūrus,** if they occur, are used.

102. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiīs et sagittīs incolās oppidī superāvērunt. 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Gallī parābunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolās pīlīs armāvit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautae perītō dedērunt. 6. In oppidum puellās et puerōs convocābant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103. EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparāre mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Multa impedīmenta in vīcum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēgīnam portābant. 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae ferae erant. 8. Ad[1] oppidum frūmentī cōpia erat. 9. Multōs vīcōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiīs ad[1] impedīmenta pugnāverant. 11. Magnam[2] pecūniam incolīs nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken-by-storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

[1] *near.* [2] = *much.*

LESSON 14

SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in ē are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

PRIN. PARTS: **moneō**, *I advise, warn*, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**
videō, *I see*, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus**

PRES.	**moneō**, *I warn*	**videō**, *I see*
IMPF.	**monēbam**, *I warned*	**vidēbam**, *I saw*
FUT.	**monēbō**, *I shall warn*	**vidēbō**, *I shall see*
PERF.	**monuī**, *I have warned*	**vīdī**, *I have seen*
PLUP.	**monueram**, *I had warned*	**vīderam**, *I had seen*
FUT. PF.	**monuerō**, *I shall have warned*	**vīderō**, *I shall have seen*

105. CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **moneō**

SING.	1.	**moneō**, *I advise, am advising, do advise*
	2.	**monēs**, *you advise*, etc.
	3.	**monet**, *he advises*, etc.
PLUR.	1.	**monēmus**, *we advise*, etc.
	2.	**monētis**, *you advise*, etc.
	3.	**monent**, *they advise*, etc.

1. Observe that the -ē- of the present stem, unlike the -ā- of **amō**, is retained before the personal ending -o of the first person singular.
2. What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of **moneō**? of **amō**?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **moneō**

SINGULAR

1. **mónuī**, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. **monuístī**, *you have advised*, etc.
3. **mónuit**, *he has advised*, etc.

PLURAL

1. **monúimus**, *we have advised*, etc.
2. **monuístis**, *you have advised*, etc.
3. **monuērunt** (**monuēre**), *they have advised*, etc.

1. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of **amō**. Note that the perfect stem **monu-** does not end in **v**, as in **amō**, perfect stem **amāv-**.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *I have, hold*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *I see*

108. VOCABULARY

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, *advise, warn.*
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold.*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see.*
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, scare.*
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move;* **castra movēre**, *break up camp.*
dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, contend.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty, spoil.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

109. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Saxīs tēlīs[1] Gallī cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. 2. Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs parāverant. 3. Ad portam līberōs portāvērunt. 4. Paucōs librōs amīcō meō dedī. 5. Rōmānī multa arma in hīberna portābunt. 6. Cūr oppidum expugnāre mātūrāvērunt?

II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins. 2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my friend a book?

110. EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbat; vīdit; terruerat. 2. Vīderimus; mōvistī; habēbis. 3. Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint. 4. Rōmānī cum Helvētiīs dīmicābant. 5. Perīculum magnum oppidī incolās terruerat. 6. Praedam in vīcīs multam vīdērunt. 7. Gallī cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant. 8. Vīdistīne tuum perīculum? 9. Puerī multa praemia habēbunt. 10. Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs agricolās terruērunt. 11. Mox cōpiam frūmentī habuerit. 12. Praeda nautās pigrōs dēlectābit.

II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have had. 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have fought. 3. The Gauls broke up camp. 4. They had contended with the inhabitants. 5. The messenger frightened the lieutenant by the story. 6. There is great danger in wine.

[1] In apposition with saxīs (see 58).

Gladius

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

111. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or in **-i-**.

112. CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	dux, m., *leader, general*	**mīles**, m., *soldier*	**virtūs**, f., *virtue*	**caput**, n., *head*	CASE ENDINGS OF CONSONANT STEMS *M. and F.*	*N.*
Stem and Base	**duc-**	**mīlit-**	**virtūt-**	**capit-**		
		SINGULAR				
NOM.	dux	mīles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN.	ducis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	**-is**	**-is**
DAT.	ducī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī	**-ī**	**-ī**
ACC.	ducem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	**-em**	
ABL.	duce	mīlite	virtūte	capite	**-e**	**-e**
		PLURAL				
NOM.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	**-ēs**	**-a**
GEN.	ducum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	**-um**	**-um**
DAT.	ducibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
ACC.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	**-ēs**	**-a**
ABL.	ducibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

1. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2 and contrast 25). Both are obtained by dropping the ending **-is** of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the case endings, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king.*

113. VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, m., *leader, general.*
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*
eques, equitis, m., *horseman;* (plur.) *cavalry, cavalrymen.*
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, bravery, virtue.*
caput, capitis, n., *head.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus, *put to flight.*
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase, enlarge.*

114. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad portam nūntium vīdit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs ferīs dīmicābant? 3. Perīculum fīlī videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās perītōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Multam praedam in castrīs vīderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniam mox fīliae?

II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters. 2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers. 3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will hasten to besiege the town.

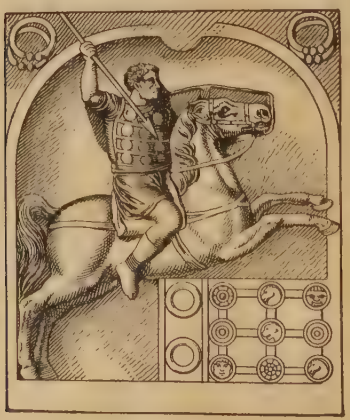
115. EXERCISES

I. 1. Capitibus; virtūtī; capita. 2. Eques equum laudābat. 3. Mīlitēs impedīmenta in castra portāverant.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium mīlitum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vīdimus. 7. Virtūs mīlitum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est mīlitum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiīs equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Mīlitibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Multum frūmentum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply [1] of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

[1] cōpia.



Eques

LESSON 16

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116. CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	cōnsul, m., *consul*[1]	**homō**, m., *man*	**pater**, m., *father*	**corpus**, n., *body*
Stem and Base	**cōnsul-**	**homin-**	**patr-**	**corpor-**
	SINGULAR			
NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	hominī	patrī	corporī
ACC.	cōnsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore
	PLURAL			
NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

1. Are the case endings of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
2. Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum.**

[1] The title of one of the two presiding magistrates of the Roman commonwealth.

117. Examine the following:

1. **Dux victōriā laetus est,** *the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. **Hominēs cibī inopiā labōrābant,** *the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (*a*) that the ablatives **victōriā, inopiā,** express the *cause* or *reason;* (*b*) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of, on account of, from.*

Review 93, 94.

118. RULE. — **Ablative of Cause.** — *Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*[1]

119. VOCABULARY

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul.*
homō, hominis, m., *man.*
pater, patris, m., *father.*
corpus, corporis, n., *body.*
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier;* plur., *infantry.*
tempus, temporis, n., *time, season.*
vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*
vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wound.*
labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, *work, suffer.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over.*

120. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat. 2. Virtūte mīlitēs in fugam dedimus. 3. Mīlitēs perītī in castra arma portāvērunt. 4. Ducī fidō magnam pecūniam Rōmānī dederant. 5. Magna cōpia frūmentī mox in vīcō erit. 6. Cūr ad portās oppidī tēla portāvit?

[1] This use of the ablative is found chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing emotion or feeling (joy, sorrow, fear, etc.)

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121. EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Multa vulnera sunt in corporibus mīlitum. 3. Tempus proeliō idōneum est. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidī. 6. Mīles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōnsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs multōs incolās pīlīs vulnerāvērunt. 9. Mīlitēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere miser sum. 11. Homō fīliōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs mīlitēs trāns flūmen vīdit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.

Coin of Caesar

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). VOWEL STEMS, IN -i-

122. STEMS IN **-i-**

Paradigms

	collis, m., *hill*	**caedēs**, f., *slaughter*	**mōns**, m., *mountain*	**animal**, n., *animal*
Stem	**colli-**	**caedi-**	**monti-**	**animāli-**
Base	**coll-**	**caed-**	**mont-**	**animāl-**

	SINGULAR				CASE ENDINGS OF -i- STEMS	
					M. and F.	*N.*
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)	
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	**-is**	**-is**
DAT.	collī	caedī	montī	animālī	**-ī**	**-ī**
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	**-em**	
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animālī	**-e**	**-ī**

	PLURAL					
NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	**-ēs**	**-ia**
GEN.	collium	caedium	montium	animālium	**-ium**	**-ium**
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
ACC.	collīs, ēs	caedīs, ēs	montīs, ēs	animālia	**-īs, -ēs**	**-ia**
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

1. Compare very carefully these case endings with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. Contrast 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular both in **-ī** and in **-e**, though usually in **-ī**: **nāvis**, *ship;* **ignis**, *fire;* **cīvis**, *citizen;* **turris**, *tower;* **fīnis**, *end;* **avis**, *bird.* All neuter **-i-** stems have the ablative singular in **-ī**. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in **-im**: **turris, turrim**, *tower.*

4. Decline together: **urbs pulchra**, *beautiful city;* **animal magnum**, *large animal.*

123. Since nouns with **-i-** stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have **-i-** stems. The following classes have **-i-** stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. *Nouns in* **-is** *and* **-ēs**, *having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.*
2. *Neuters in* **-e, -al, -ar.**
3. *Nouns of one syllable in* **-s** *or* **-x** *following a consonant.*
4. *Nouns in* **-ns** *and* **-rs.**

124. Decline the following:

mare, maris, n., *sea.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*
hostis, hostis, m. and f., *enemy* (usually plural).
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
sedīle, sedīlis, n., *seat.*

125. VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with **-i** stems.)

collis, collis, m., *hill.*
caedēs, caedis, f., *slaughter.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
laetus, a, um, *glad.*
occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take-possession-of, seize, occupy.*
animal, animālis, n., *animal.*
nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.*
per, prep. with acc. *through, by means of.*
dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, concerning.*

126. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Meī patris amīcus vulnere labōrāvit. 2. Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit. 3. Gallī equitum perītōrum inopiā labōrābant. 4. Multa vulnera in corporibus mīlitum vīdistī. 5. Peditēs trāns flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt. 6. Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of a skillful leader. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127. EXERCISES

I. 1. Mīlitēs dē monte in vīcum impedīmenta portābant. 2. In nāvibus erant nautae multī et validī. 3. Nōnne mīlitēs magnam partem urbis expugnābunt? 4. Miser erat cōnsul caede mīlitum validōrum. 5. Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit. 6. In marī sunt nāvēs pulchrae. 7. Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat. 8. In monte erant multa et fera animālia. 9. Cōnsul mīlitibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat. 10. Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many[1] lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took-possession-of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened to go[2] from the hill into the broad fields.

[1] *Many lazy = many and lazy.* See 127, I, 2, 8. **īre.**

LESSON 18

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

128. Gender. — For the general rules for gender see 28. The rules for gender for the third declension are these, but there are many exceptions:

1. **Masculine.** — Masculine are nouns in **-ō** (genitive **-ōnis**), **-or** (genitive **-ōris**), **-tor** (genitive **-tōris**), **-er** (genitive **-ris**; cf. **pater, patris**), **-es** (genitive **-itis**), **-eps** (genitive **-ipis**), **-ex** (genitive **-icis**).
2. **Feminine.** — Feminine are nouns in **-tās, -tūs, -rs** (genitive **-rtis**; cf. **ars, artis**), **-is** and **-ēs** (if genitive is in **-is**), **-dō** or **-gō** (genitive **-dinis, -ginis**), and **-iō** (genitive **-iōnis**).
3. **Neuter.** — Neuter are nouns in **-al** (genitive **-ālis**), **-en, -ar** (genitive **-āris**), **-ur** (genitive **-oris**), **-us** (genitive **-eris** or **-oris**), **-t, -e** (genitive **-is**).

1. What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions?

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) stem, (5) ablative singular, (6) nominative plural, (7) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

animal	dux	mare	pater	rēx
caedēs	eques	mōns	pēs	tempus
caput	flūmen	mīles	pedes	urbs
cōnsul	homō	nāvis	pōns	vulnus
collis	hostis	nōmen	pars	virtūs

130. Examine the following:

1. **Hieme labōrāmus**, *in winter we work.*
2. **Decem mēnsibus multās urbēs vīdit**, *within ten months he saw many cities.*
3. **Prīmā lūce hostēs in fugam dedērunt**, *at daybreak they put the enemy to flight.*

Observe that the ablatives **hieme, decem mēnsibus, prīmā lūce**, tell *when* or *within what time* the action of the verb took place, and that no preposition is used in Latin.

131. RULE. — **Ablative of Time.** — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

132. VOCABULARY

nox, noctis, f. (gen. plur. **noctium**), *night.*	**annus, ī**, m., *year.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter.*	**prīmus, a, um**, *first.*
aestās, aestātis, f., *summer.*	**decem**, indecl., *ten.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.*	**quattuor**, indecl., *four.*
	multā nocte, *late at night.*

133. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aestāte agrī pulchrī incolās urbis dēlectant. 2. Prīmā lūce[1] multōs montēs vīdimus. 3. Hostēs tēlīs equitēs vulnerābant. 4. Quattuor annīs multa oppida hostium dux expugnāverat. 5. Cibī inopiā Gallī hieme labōrābant. 6. Multā nocte cōnsul peditēs in castra convocābit. 7. Multās urbēs decem annīs dux Helvētiōrum occupāverat. 8. Prīmō annō bellī multa oppida expugnāverat. 9. Prīmā lūce hostēs in castrīs erant.

II. 1. He captured the city by-means-of his cavalry. 2. At night the enemy hastened to go toward the Romans'

[1] **Prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

camp. 3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.[1] 4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At daybreak we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. In winter the nights are long. 7. In ten years there are ten summers.

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134. Julius Caesar

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

[1] The neuter plural **pulchra** means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.

Head of Julius Cæsar
(From a silver coin, 38–36 B.C.)

135. The Helvetian War

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136. Hints for Translation

1. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.

3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.

4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I

READING LESSON

Description of Gaul

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies, *but not till he has followed the hints given above*, 136, 1–4.)

137. Belgae[1] et Aquītānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt.[2] Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgae sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētiī sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Ōceanī quae (*which*) est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

Note. — Learn the principal parts of all the verbs of the first and second conjugations thus far given in this book. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

[1] For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 10.

[2] Third person plural, present indicative, of **incolō**. Can you not infer its meaning from **incola**?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. AGENCY WITH THE PASSIVE

138. Review 26, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field, the farmer lives happily;* in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon: *the field is plowed by the farmer.*

139. **Paradigms**

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1.	amō, *I love, am loving, do love*	-ō
2.	amās, *you love*, etc.	-s
3.	amat, *he loves*, etc.	-t
	PLURAL	
1.	amāmus, *we love*, etc.	-mus
2.	amātis, *you love*, etc.	-tis
3.	amant, *they love*, etc.	-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR	
1.	amor, *I am loved, am being loved*	-r
2.	amāris, amāre, *you are loved*, etc.	-ris, -re
3.	amātur, *he is loved*, etc.	-tur
	PLURAL	
1.	amāmur, *we are loved*, etc.	-mur
2.	amāminī, *you are loved*, etc.	-minī
3.	amantur, *they are loved*, etc.	-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE

SECOND CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1.	**monē**ō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*	**-ō**
2.	**monē**s, *you advise*, etc.	**-s**
3.	**monē**t, *he advises*, etc.	**-t**
	PLURAL	
1.	**monē**mus, *we advise*, etc.	**-mus**
2.	**monē**tis, *you advise*, etc.	**-tis**
3.	**monē**nt, *they advise*, etc.	**-nt**

PASSIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR	
1.	**monē**or, *I am advised, am being advised*	**-r**
2.	**monē**ris, **monē**re, *you are advised*, etc.	**-ris, -re**
3.	**monē**tur, *he is advised*, etc.	**-tur**
	PLURAL	
1.	**monē**mur, *we are advised*, etc.	**-mur**
2.	**monē**minī, *you are advised*, etc.	**-minī**
3.	**monē**ntur, *they are advised*, etc.	**-ntur**

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

laudō, *I praise*	**vocō**, *I call*
videō, *I see*	**terreō**, *I frighten*

141. Examine the following:

1. **Coniūrātī Caesarem necant,** *the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. **Caesar ā coniūrātīs necātur,** *Caesar is being killed by the conspirators.*
3. **Caesar gladiō necātur,** *Caesar is being killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning active into passive:

a. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive;

b. The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, of the active verb is expressed in the passive by the ablative with **ā**.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully the examples 2 and 3 above, and note that a preposition is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a person, while none is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a thing, not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. RULE. — **Agency with the Passive Voice.** — *The personal agent with a passive verb* (*i.e.* the person by whom something is done) *is expressed by the ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab.**

143. VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion* (about 5000 soldiers).
necō, āre, āvī, ātus, *kill.*
ā, ab,[1] prep. with abl., *from, by.*
ob, prep. with acc., *on-account-of, for.*
celeritās, ātis, f., *speed, quickness.*
incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.*
ē, ex,[1] prep. with abl., *out of, from.*
propter, prep. with acc., *on-account-of, for.*

[1] Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* use **ab** or **ex**; use **ā** or **ē** before a consonant.

144. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlīs Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvīs in marī vīderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōnsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in[1] flūmine erat. 6. Caede līberōrum miserōrum miserī sumus.

II. 1. In winter the nights are long. 2. Caesar's cavalry took-possession-of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145. EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēminī. 2. Incitant, incitantur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesar mīlitēs convocat. 4. Mīlitēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob[2] virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce propter[2] virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibī cōpia ā mīlitibus in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte mīlitum incolae oppidī incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ā mīlitibus in hīberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains to the city.

[1] *over*.

[2] In expressions not covered by 118, footnote, **ob** or **propter** with the accusative is the normal way of expressing cause. **Ob** is used especially in connection with **rem** or **causam**.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146. **Paradigms**

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
1. amā**bar**,	*I was loved, was being loved*	1. monē**bar**,	*I was advised, wds being advised*
2. amā**bāris**, amā**bāre**,	*you were loved*, etc.	2. monē**bāris**, monē**bāre**,	*you were advised*, etc.
3. amā**bātur**,	*he was loved*, etc.	3. monē**bātur**,	*he was advised*, etc.

PLURAL		PLURAL	
1. amā**bāmur**,	*we were loved*, etc.	1. monē**bāmur**,	*we were advised*, etc.
2. amā**bāminī**,	*you were loved*, etc.	2. monē**bāminī**,	*you were advised*, etc.
3. amā**bantur**,	*they were loved*, etc.	3. monē**bantur**,	*they were advised*, etc.

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
1. amā**bor**,	*I shall be loved*	1. monē**bor**,	*I shall be advised*
2. amā**beris**, / amā**bere**,	*you will be loved*	2. monē**beris**, monē**bere**,	*you will be advised*
3. amā**bitur**,	*he will be loved*	3. monē**bitur**,	*he will be advised*

PLURAL	PLURAL
1. **amābimur**, *we shall be loved*	1. **monēbimur**, *we shall be advised*
2. **amābiminī**, *you will be loved*	2. **monēbiminī**, *you will be advised*
3. **amābuntur**, *they will be loved*	3. **monēbuntur**, *they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is **a** in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems **amā-** and **monē-** by adding **-bar** and **-bor** respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following:

1. **Agricola cum cūrā arat**, *the farmer plows with care* (*carefully*).
2. **Agricola magnā cum**[1] **cūrā arat** } *the farmer plows with*
3. **Agricola magnā cūrā arat** } *great care* (*very carefully*)

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions **cum cūrā, magnā cum cūrā, magnā cūrā**, express the manner of the action of the verb (*i.e.* how the action of the verb is done).
2. That **magnā cum cūrā** and **magnā cūrā** are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

[1] Notice that the *monosyllabic* preposition is placed between the adjective and the noun.

148. RULE. — **Ablative of Manner.** — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition* **cum**, *but* **cum** *may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

149. VOCABULARY

studium, ī, n., *zeal, eagerness.*
cūra, ae, f., *care.*
obses, obsidis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge.*
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *multitude, crowd.*
imperium, ī, n., *command, power.*
imperātor, ōris, m., *general, commander in chief.*
conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *place, station.*
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *fill up, complete.*
diū, adv., *long, for a long time.*

150. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitum celeritāte Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbis pars ā Gallīs occupātur. 6. Mīlitēs ā rēge in hīberna convocantur.

II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took-possession-of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151. EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābat, laudābātur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur. 2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus dīmicābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātōre magnō studiō oppugnābātur. 7. Caesarī imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem equitum multitūdine complēvit. 9. Līberōs multōs obsidēs Caesarī Gallī dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?

II. 1. You will see, you will be seen. 2. Are we praising? he will be blamed. 3. They were wounded by the infantry with swords. 4. At daybreak the Romans fought eagerly. 5. A large part of the arms was carried very carefully into camp. 6. Many soldiers were seen near the bridge.

LESSON 22

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

152. Review 39, 81, 86. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all Latin verbs have compound forms. They employ the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future tenses respectively of the auxiliary verb **sum**. The participle is like an adjective in form and syntax, and its endings change to agree with the gender and number of the subject of the verb.

Paradigms

PERFECT PASSIVE OF **amō**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	amātus,	**sum**, *I have been loved, I was loved*	amātī,	**sumus**
2.	**a, um**	**es**	**ae, a**	**estis**
3.		**est**		**sunt**

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

1.	amātus,	**eram**, *I had been loved*	amātī,	**erāmus**
2.	**a, um**	**erās**	**ae, a**	**erātis**
3.		**erat**		**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	amātus, a, um	erō, *I shall have been loved*	amātī, ae, a	erimus
2.		eris		eritis
3.		erit		erunt

1. In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of **moneō, videō, portō**, giving English meanings.
2. Note carefully that the participle is declined like **bonus**, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,

I (a girl) *have been loved*, **amāta sum**
we (girls) *have been loved*, **amātae sumus**
the town had been seen, **oppidum vīsum erat**
the girl has been loved, **puella amāta est**

3. For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., *mouth.*
iter, itineris, n., *march, road, journey* (476).
ex itinere, *on the march.*
cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., *citizen.*
cīvitās, ātis, f., *state, citizenship.*
cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *strengthen, establish.*
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *hold together, restrain, hem in, bound.*

154. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt. 2. Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt. 3. Pāx

cum multīs cīvitātibus est cōnfīrmāta. 4. Cīvēs ob amīcitiam laudāvimus. 5. Gallī montibus et flūminibus continēbantur. 6. Multa oppida decem mēnsibus occupāta erant. 7. Magna Helvētiōrum urbs ex itinere est expugnāta. 8. Multum frūmentum ex agrīs in hīberna portātum erat. 9. Caesar mīlitēs in castrīs habēbat. 10. Multī hominēs ā Rōmānīs erant necātī. 11. Multōs cīvīs in Ītaliā vīdimus. 12. Urbs ab imperātōre magnō cum studiō oppugnāta est.

II. 1. She was restrained; you (plur.) had been blamed. 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased; they have been summoned. 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls. 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders. 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city. 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery. 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march. 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.

Civis

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

ācer, *sharp, keen, eager*

Stem ācrī-
Base ācr-

SINGULAR

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs, ēs	ācrīs, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

1. Note that adjectives of this declension have -i- stems, and that the ablative singular ends in -ī. Review 122.

156. Examine the following:

1. **Helvētiī Gallōs virtūte superant,** *the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. **Vir nōmine, nōn factīs, amīcus erat,** *the man was a friend in name, (but) not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives **virtūte, nōmine, factīs,** tell *in what respect* the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. RULE. — **Ablative of Specification.** — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective, applies. No preposition is used.*

158. VOCABULARY

altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow, contracted.*
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours.*
ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen, sharp, eager, fierce.*
equester, equestris, equestre, *of the cavalry; cavalry* (adj.).
fīnis, fīnis, m., *end;* (plur.) *boundary, territory.*
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjoining;* **fīnitimī, ōrum,** m., *neighbors.*
quod, conj., *because.*
-que, *and,* an enclitic, always attached to the second of two words connected.
magnitūdō, inis, f., *greatness, size.*

159. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux fīlium propter virtūtem laudāverat. 2. Pāx quattuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multīs cīvitātibus erat cōnfīrmāta. 3. Multā nocte cōpiae ex agrīs in castra convocābantur. 4. Mīlitēs hieme in hīberna convocātī sunt. 5. Multī incolae gladiīs equitum vulnerātī erant.

II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

160. EXERCISES

I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiōrum fīnibus erant. 2. Iter per fīnēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmānī virtūte, nōn magnitūdine corporis, Gallōs superābant. 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae angusta et alta erant. 6. Equitēs ā Caesare laudātī sunt, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt. 7. Ācrēs perītaeque[1] erant cōpiae cōnsulis. 8. Peditēs Caesaris proeliō ācrēs erant. 9. Cūr Helvētiī ā ducibus incitātī sunt? Quod altīs montibus et flūminibus lātīs continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestrī proeliō superātī erant.

II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

[1] Notice to which word **-que** is added. Translate **-que** *before* the word to which it is attached.

Galli

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS AND ONE TERMINATION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike in all cases. Except comparatives (see 257), they are all declined like the following:

facilis, *easy*

Stem **facili-**
Base **facil-**

	Singular		
	Masculine and Feminine		*Neuter*
Nom.	facil**is**		facile
Gen.	facil**is**		facil**is**
Dat.	facil**ī**		facil**ī**
Acc.	facil**em**		facile
Abl.	facil**ī**		facil**ī**
	Plural		
Nom.	facil**ēs**		facil**ia**
Gen.	facil**ium**		facil**ium**
Dat.	facil**ibus**		facil**ibus**
Acc.	facil**īs** (**ēs**)		facil**ia**
Abl.	facil**ibus**		facil**ibus**

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following:

audāx, *bold*

Stem **audāci-**
Base **audāc-**

SINGULAR

	Masculine and Feminine	*Neuter*
NOM.	audāx	audāx
GEN.	audāc**is**	audāc**is**
DAT.	audāc**ī**	audāc**ī**
ACC.	audāc**em**	audāx
ABL.	audāc**ī (e)**	audāc**ī (e)**

PLURAL

NOM.	audāc**ēs**	audāc**ia**
GEN.	audāc**ium**	audāc**ium**
DAT.	audāc**ibus**	audāc**ibus**
ACC.	audāc**īs (ēs)**	audāc**ia**
ABL.	audāc**ibus**	audāc**ibus**

Observe

1. That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
2. That adjectives of the third declension ending in **-er** have three terminations, those in **-is** two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
3. That they have **-i-** stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only **-ī** in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following:

1. **Fīlius patrī similis erat,** *the son was like his father.*
2. **Locus castrīs idōneus erat,** *the place was suitable for a camp.*

Observe that the datives **patrī** and **castrīs** are related to the adjectives **similis** and **idōneus**.

163. RULE. — **Dative with Adjectives.** — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164. VOCABULARY

fortis, e, *brave, strong.*	**omnis**, e, *all, every, the whole.*
similis, e, *like, similar.*	**brevis**, e, *brief, short.*
dissimilis, e, *dissimilar, unlike.*	**pār**, gen. **paris**, *equal (to).*
facilis, e, *easy.*	**vetus**,[1] gen. **veteris**, *old, ancient.*
difficilis, e, *difficult.*	**gēns**, **gentis**, f., *race, nation.*
	populus, ī, m., *people.*

165. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī flūminibus altīs continēbantur. 2. Ad flūmen iter angustum erat. 3. Cūr fīnitimī nostrī terrentur? Quod cum Rōmānīs pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāvimus. 4. Caesar equestribus proeliīs Gallōs superāvit. 5. Peditēs nostrī altīs flūminibus terrēbantur. 6. Gallōs magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.

II. 1. There are many beautiful ships on the sea. 2. Our cavalry were fierce in battle. 3. Why were they frightened? Because they saw many deep rivers and high mountains. 4. The bridges have been taken-possession-of by the enemy.

166. EXERCISES

I. 1. Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs. 2. Caesar veterēs mīlitēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant. 3. Mīlitēs

[1] This is not an **i** stem; its ablative singular is formed in **-e**.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevī tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētiī multitūdine hominum populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Puer fortis ā mīlite vulnerātus est. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multīs imperātōribus dissimilis erat. 10. Fīnitimī nostrī omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and[1] faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people[2] was not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

The Ambitious Designs of the Helvetii under the Leadership of Orgetorix

167. Orgetorīx, quī[3] prīnceps erat Helvētiōrum, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit (*formed*) et cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus pācem amīcitiamque cōnfirmāvit. Helvētiī undique nātūrā locī continentur, ūnā ex parte[4] flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit,[5] alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Quā dē causā[6] fīnēs Helvētiōrum angustī erant prō[7] multitūdine hominum, et ēmigrāre[8] cupiēbant.[9]

[1] Use **-que.** [2] **populus Rōmānus.** [3] the relative pronoun *who, which, that.* [4] **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side.* [5] third person singular of **dīvidō.** [6] **Quā dē causā,** *for this reason.* [7] ***in proportion to.*** [8] ***to emigrate.*** [9] third person plural imperfect of **cupiō.**

LESSON 26

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum**.
REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

PRIN. PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
		SINGULAR	
1.	**fuī**, *I have been, I was*	**fueram**, *I had been*	**fuerō**, *I shall have been*
2.	**fuistī**	**fuerās**	**fueris**
3.	**fuit**	**fuerat**	**fuerit**
		PLURAL	
1.	**fuimus**	**fuerāmus**	**fuerimus**
2.	**fuistis**	**fuerātis**	**fueritis**
3.	**fuērunt** (**fuēre**)	**fuerant**	**fuerint**

1. Observe that the perfect stem is **fu-**, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this stem by adding **-eram** and **-erō**.
2. Are the personal endings regular?

169. The following verbs of the first and second conjugations have been introduced in the preceding lessons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why must one know the principal parts of a verb?

pugnō	conlocō	videō	laudō	superō	mātūrō
expugnō	cōnfīrmō	contineō	culpō	armō	incitō
oppugnō	comparō	compleō	servō	occupō	labōrō
vocō	augeō	moveō	dēlectō	vulnerō	necō
convocō	habeō	moneō	dō portō	dīmicō	terreō

1. What is the force of **con** (**com**) in a compound verb?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of **incitō**. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of **habeō** in the second person and **augeō** in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS: **incitō, āre, āvī, ātus,** *arouse, urge on*

			ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present Stem **incitā-**	PRES.	*Sing.*	incitat	incitātur
		Plur.	incitant	incitantur
	IMP.	*Sing.*	incitābat	incitābātur
		Plur.	incitābant	incitābantur
	FUT.	*Sing.*		
		Plur.		
Perfect Stem **incitāv-**	PERF.	*Sing.*		
		Plur.		
	PLUP.	*Sing.*		
		Plur.		
	FUT. PERF.	*Sing.*		
		Plur.		

Participial Stem **incitāt-**

171. VOCABULARY

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lay waste, ravage.*

lībertās, ātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*

reliquus, a, um, *the-rest-of, remaining.*

potēns, potentis, *able, powerful.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in behalf of, for.*

172. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fuerātis; fuerimus; fuistis. 2. Gallōrum fīnēs ab equitibus vāstātī erant. 3. Reliquī hostēs prō lībertāte diū pugnāverant. 4. Belgae nāvibus erant potentēs.

5. Paucīs annīs bellō fīnitimōs Helvētiī superāverant. 6. Prō fēminīs līberīsque magnō cum studiō pugnābant. 7. Reliquae in Galliā gentēs ā nostrīs fīnitimīs incitātae sunt. 8. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus fīnēs Helvētiōrum vāstāre mātūrābit. 9. Legiōnēs populī Rōmānī magnitūdine corporis Gallōrum terrēbantur. 10. Servus dominō virtūte erat similis. 11. Altīs montibus et lātīs flūminibus oppidum continētur.

II. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge. 2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste. 3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful. 4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed. 5. The citizens will fight for the general. 6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight. 7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173. **dūcō**, *I lead*

PRIN. PARTS: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of **dūcō** (493).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of **dūcō** with the present of **moneō** and **amō** in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of **dūcō** with the future of **moneō**, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the characteristic vowel of this conjugation is *short* **-e-**, that of the second conjugation *long* **-ē-**.
6. Like **dūcō** conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of **mittō**, *send*, and **vincō**, *conquer*.

174. VOCABULARY

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*.
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send*.
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer*.
relinquō, ere, relīquī, relictus, *leave behind, leave*.
contendō, ere, contendī, contentum, *struggle, strive, hasten, hurry, march*.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *carry on, wage*.
incolō, ere, incoluī, —, *inhabit*.
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.
saepe, adv., *often, frequently*.

175. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmentī in agrīs est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābulīs Gallōrum sunt incitātī. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiīs similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitūdine hominum erant potentēs. 5. Paucī vīcī ab hostibus vāstātī erant. 6. Omnēs prō lībertāte magnō studiō pugnābimus.

II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētiī saepe cum fīnitimīs contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castrīs erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētiī magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincentur. 9. Imperātor per fīnēs Gallōrum contrā Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs contrā īnsulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiīs Rōmānōs superābant.

II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people were waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in **iō** in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

capiō, *take*

PRIN. PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of **capiō** (495).

1. Observe that the conjugation of **capiō** differs from that of **dūcō** in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from **dūcō**?
3. Like **capiō** conjugate these tenses of **fugiō**, *flee*, and **iaciō**, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **capiō** (493, 495).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of **iaciō**, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179. VOCABULARY

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture, form.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, —, *flee, run away.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *do, make;* **iter facere,** *march;* **proelium facere,** *fight a battle.*

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *kill.*

trādūcō (**trāns** + **dūcō**), **ere, trādūxī, trāductus,** *lead over, transport.*

cōnsilium, ī, n., *advice, prudence, plan.*

moenia, moenium, n. (plur.), *walls, fortifications.*

180. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquent. 2. Neque peditibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt. 3. Estne iter ad oppidum facile? 4. Rōmānī in hostium fīnēs multās legiōnēs mittēbant. 5. Decem mēnsibus multae gentēs ā cōnsule vincentur.

II. 1. The Helvetii often carried on war with their

neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181. EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūcimur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum fīnēs iter[1] faciet. 4. Rōmānī ab hostibus cōpiam frūmentī capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte paucī peditēs interfectī erant. 7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor propter cōnsilium proelī lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. 10. Cōnsul ad flūmen lātum proelium fēcit. 11. Multī equitēs ā cōpiīs nostrīs interficientur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.[2] 5. The Helvetii will march[3] out of their[4] territory. 6. In the winter Caesar used[5] to form his plans.

[1] **iter faciō**, *march.* [2] *was a good one = was good.* [3] *march = make a march.* [4] Omit. [5] *used to form*: use the imperfect of **capiō**.

Caricature of Soldier
(Pompeii)

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182. PRESENT INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FIRST CONJ.	amāre, *to love*	amārī, *to be loved*
SECOND CONJ.	monēre, *to advise*	monērī, *to be advised*
THIRD CONJ.	dūcere, *to lead*	dūcī, *to be led*
	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
FOURTH CONJ.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard*

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second principal part of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final **-e** to **-ī**, except in the third conjugation, which changes final **-ere** to **-ī**.

183. Examine the following:

1. **Mātūrat mīlitēs convocāre,** *he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
2. **Laudārī est grātum,** *to be praised is pleasant.*
3. **Incolās armārī iubet,** *he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
4. **Omnēs prīmī esse cupimus,** *we all wish to be first.*
5. **Dēbet interficī,** *he ought to be killed.*
6. **Fortis esse dīcitur,** *he is said to be brave.*
7. **Fīliōs bonōs esse cupimus,** *we wish our sons to be good.*

a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.

b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of **est**. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive.*

c. In 3, observe that **incolās**, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. So **fīliōs** in 7. In 4, note that the predicate adjective **prīmī** agrees with the subject of the main verb, **cupimus**, and is therefore nominative. In 7, the predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the infinitive and is therefore accusative.

184. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject of Infinitive.** — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

2. **Complementary Infinitive.** — *Verbs signifying to be willing, determine, be able, dare, begin, cease, be accustomed, etc., are used with an infinitive (complementary infinitive) without subject accusative, to indicate another action of the subject of the verb of willing, determining, etc.*

3. **Predicate Adjective with Infinitive.** — *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185. VOCABULARY

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak, tell.*
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought.*
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (iī), cupītus, *wish, desire.*
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *place, station, determine, appoint.*
parātus, a, um (parō), *prepared, ready.*
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, name.*
auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help.*
numerus, ī, m., *number.*

186. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vir perītus esse dēbet. 2. Pater fīlium fortem esse cupit. 3. Helvētiī lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt. 4. Difficile est gentēs potentēs superāre.

5. Helvētiī, inopiā cibī permōtī (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Gallī cōnstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 8. Tuus amīcus appellārī dīcitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōnstituerat. 10. Caesar cōnstituit cum Helvētiīs, incolīs Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dīcēbantur. 12. Cōnsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. The soldiers desire to be praised.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

Preparations of Orgetorix and the Helvetii

187. Helvētiī auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī[1] iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum cōpiamque frūmentī comparāre cōnstituērunt. In[2] tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōnfīrmāvērunt, et ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs Orgetorīgem lēgātum mīsērunt. Casticus Sēquanus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amīcus appellātus erat, et Dumnorīx Haeduus, prīncipēs in suīs (*their*) cīvitātibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs prīncipēs potentium cīvitātum inter sē[3] iūsiūrandum dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

[1] See 186 I, 5. [2] *for*. [3] **inter sē**, *one another* (literally, *among themselves*).

LESSON 31

THE DEMONSTRATIVE is. īdem

188. **Is, ea, id**

As adjective, *this, that;* plur., *these, those.*
As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it;* plur., *these, those, they.*

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

1. In what cases do the endings differ from those of **bonus** (62)? The stem is -e- or -i-.

189. **īdem** (is + dem), *the same*

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	īdem	éadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	éadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	éadem
Abl.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

1. Observe that, in **īdem**, **dem** is uninflected, but **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following:

1. **Is mīles laudātur**, *that soldier is praised.*
2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise that* (*man*), i.e. *him.*
3. **Amīcum eius laudāmus**, *we praise his friend* (i.e. *the friend of him*).
4. **Amīcum eōrum laudāmus**, *we praise their friend* (i.e. *the friend of them*).

a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective.* It tells in an unemphatic manner *what* man is praised. **Is** commonly refers to some one or something just mentioned, and thus often equals *the aforesaid.*

b. In 2, 3, and 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun.*

c. **Eius** means *his, hers, its;* **eōrum** means *their,* referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their,* referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is.**

d. Decline together: **ea fēmina, id nōmen, is mīles.**

e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is.** See also 196, *c.*

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

NOM. this, that; he, she, it.
GEN. of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its.
DAT. to *or* for this *or* that; to *or* for him, her, it.
ACC. this, that; him, her, it.
ABL. from, with, by this *or* that; from, with, by him, her, it.

PLURAL

NOM. these, those; they.
GEN. of these, of those; of them, their.
DAT. to *or* for these *or* those; to *or* for them.
ACC. these, those; them.
ABL. from, with, by these *or* those; from, with, by them.

192. VOCABULARY

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Labienus* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (one of the subdivisions of the legion).
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend, protect.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, *influence, arouse.*
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, pitch* (a camp).
prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *leader, chief.*
pugna, ae, f., *battle.*
post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

193. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Auxilium parāre dēbēmus. 2. Mīlitēs fortēs esse cupiunt. 3. Caesarī obsidēs dare cōnstituērunt. 4. Mīlitēs cum virtūte pugnāre iubēbit. 5. Numerus nāvium magnus esse dīcitur. 6. Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers are said to be in the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eius; eārum; eī agricolae. 2. Eiusdem virī; eaedem cohortēs; in eādem urbe. 3. Caesar, prīnceps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat. 4. Eius mīlitēs post

eam pugnam eum ob fortūnam laudāvērunt. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar incolīs lībertātem dedit, quod mūrōs magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 6. Fortūna bellī nōn semper eadem est. 7. Labiēnus eāsdem cohortēs in Helvētiōs dūxit et mox eōs vīcit. 8. In eōrum vīcō Labiēnus castra posuit, et paucīs mēnsibus multa proelia fēcit. 9. Helvētii mūrōs eius oppidī magnā cum virtūte semper dēfendent 10. Eōsdem mīlitēs ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. He was influenced by their advice. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend the walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195. **quī**, *who, which, that, what*

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Table of Meanings for Reference

Nom.	who, which, that, what.
Gen.	of whom, whose, of which, of what.
Dat.	to *or* for whom, which, *or* what.
Acc.	whom, which, that, what.
Abl.	from, with, by whom, which, *or* what.

196. Examine the following:

1. **Fēminae quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt,** *the women whom we see are beautiful.*
2. **Virōs quī in castrīs sunt laudat,** *he praises the men that are in the camp.*
3. **Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit,** *the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
4. **Puella cui librum dedit fīda est,** *the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
5. **Pīlum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit,** *the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
6. **Is quī est fortis laudātur,** *he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*

a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent;* thus the antecedent of **quās** in 1 is **fēminae**. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.

b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same.* The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, **quās** is accusative because it is the direct object of **vidēmus**; in 5, **quō** is ablative to express the instrument of the verb **vulnerātus sum**. Explain the cases of the other relatives.

c. In 6, **is** does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one.* **Is** is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative. This is, in fact, the commonest use of **is**.

197. Rule. — **Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent.*

198. VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, case.*
causam dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *plead* (one's) *case.*
vinculum, ī, n., *chain.*
ex vinculīs, *in chains.*
poena, ae, f., *punishment.*
coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *announce, report.*
coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum (only in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tense), *began.*
Orgetorīx, īgis, m., *Orgetorix.*

199. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum mīlitēs in eōdem locō pugnābant. 2. Eīdem prīncipī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortēs moenia cum virtūte dēfendent. 4. Et Helvētiī et Rōmānī fortēs erant. 5. Eius castra in eādem urbe pōnuntur. 6. Post proelium mīlitēs in hīberna contendent.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the camp near the mountains.

200. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī causam coniūrātiōnis nūntiant quam Helvētiī fēcērunt. 2. Mīlitēs quōs in Galliā habent in eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorīx, quī eam coniūrātiōnem fēcerat, ex vinculīs causam dīcere coepit. 4. Eius coniūrātiō ab eīs quī missī erant Caesarī nūntiāta est. 5. Ob eam coniūrātiōnem Helvētiī, quōrum lēgātī ā Caesare convocātī erant, permōtī sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculīs dīcere poena est eius quī coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 7. Causa bellī caedēs Rōmānōrum fuit quī in eā urbe fuērunt. 8. Cum eīs quōrum prīncipēs id fēcerant pugnāre coepē-

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES hīc AND ille. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. **hīc, haec, hoc,** *this*, plur. *these*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

202. **ille, illa, illud,** *that*, plur. *those*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

1. Compare the endings of **ille** with those of **is** (188).

203. Examine the following:

1. **Hīc puer omnia, illa puella pauca vīdit,** *this boy saw everything, that girl few things.*
2. **Caesar et Pompēius erant Rōmānōrum prīncipēs; ille in Galliā pugnābat, hīc in Ītaliā remanēbat,** *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
3. **Nostrī in castrīs erant,** *our men were in camp.*

a. **Hīc** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is** (190, *a*). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, **hīc** means *the latter*, **ille** means *the former*. **Ille** also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous;* with this meaning it is commonly placed after its noun. See also 208, 1.

b. Decline together **haec urbs, hoc flūmen.**

c. In 1 and 3, observe that the adjectives **omnia, pauca, nostrī,** are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; *i.e.* **multa** (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204. VOCABULARY

frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
cliēns, clientis, m., *vassal, dependent.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation.*
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech.*
cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn of, recognize.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *collect, compel, force.*
ēripiō, ere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *snatch away, save.*
sub, prep. with acc., *to the foot of;* with abl., *under, at the foot of.*

205. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī quī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dīxit permōtī sunt. 3. Causa eius poenae coniūrātiō quam fēcerat erat. 4. Orgetorīx, cuius cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Proelium quod cum Gallīs fēcerant longum erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206. EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius ōrātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hīc cliēns ex vinculīs causam dīcet. 3. Nostrī hāc ōrātiōne permōtī (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae cīvitātēs quās dīximus[1] lēgātōs ad illum ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs, illī ex urbe, hī ex agrīs, ad Caesarem contendunt. 6. Orgetorīx, prīnceps ille Helvētiōrum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius prīncipis Helvētiīs nōn grāta est. 8. Illī quōs convocāvistī clientēs meī frātris sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do these things. 5. Our men collected the baggage in that place.[2] 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former.

[1] *mention.* [2] accusative.

LESSON 34

Ipse. Iste. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207. **ipse**, *self*

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

1. Observe that **ipse** is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings **-īus** and **-ī**. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?

2. **Ipse** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, **vir ipse**, *the man himself;* **fēmina ipsa**, *the woman herself;* **proelium ipsum**, *the battle itself;* **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves;* etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours*.

1. **Hīc** is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this* (*of mine*), *this* (*near me*), *my, mine*. **Iste** points out an object near a second person directly addressed; **it** means *that near you, that in which you are interested*, but may be translated fully by *that of yours*, *your*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the

second person. **Ille** is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that* (*of his* or *hers*), *that . . . yonder, yonder.*

2. Mention the pronouns that have **-īus** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in **-īus** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of **alter** ends in **-īus**). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (480), *other, another.*
alter, altera, alterum, *one* (*of two*), *the other* (*of two*).
uter, utra, utrum, *which* (*of two*)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (*of two*), *both.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (*of two*).
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any.*
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no, none.*
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole, only.*
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all.*
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*

210. Examine the following:

1. **Nostrīs fīnibus eōs prohibēbat,** *he kept them from our territories.*
2. **Cibō caruerat,** *he had lacked food.*
3. **Ex eā parte vīcī discessit,** *he withdrew from that part of the village.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **fīnibus, cibō,** and **parte** denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. RULE. — **Ablative of Separation.** — *Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation*

takes place. **Ab** *or* **ex** *with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with* **careō** *a preposition is never used.*

212. VOCABULARY

careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *lack, be in need of, be without.*

discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum, *depart, withdraw.*

līberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *free (from), liberate.*

prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus, *keep away from.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*

rīpa, ae, f., *bank* (of river).

alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other* (of two).

alius . . . alius, *one . . . another.*

aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others.*

aliī aliam in partem, *some in one direction, some in another.*

213. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Clientēs hōs mīlitēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētiī in illīs castrīs ē perīculō sunt ēreptī. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorīgis prīncipis illīus eum cōgnōscent. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuērunt. 5. Huic mīlitī arma pīlum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūrātiōnem fēcerant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for his courage. 4. This is the soldier by whom we were saved.

214. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīc liber est meus; ille gladius est mīlitis; ubi est istud pīlum? 2. Caesar ipse cum mīlitibus ex illā urbe

discēdit. 3. Lēgātī quōs Helvētiī mīsērunt armīs carent. 4. Hostēs utrāque rīpā flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī oppidum ā mīlitibus[1] līberāvistis. 6. Aliī in rīpīs aliī in flūmine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētiōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia ab hostibus līberāta est. 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae aliī aliam in partem discēdent. 10. Caesar et Orgetorīx prīncipēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who[2] was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE **quis**

215. **audiō**, *hear*

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of **audiō** (494).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is *long* **-ī-**; it is shortened, however, before another vowel. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of **audiō** with the corresponding forms of **capiō** (495). In what forms is there a difference? Note

[1] See 211. [2] *Caesar was the very man who = Caesar himself.*

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel **i** in the present tense of **audiō**, and how this affects the place of the accent and so the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of **audiō** are formed and conjugated exactly like those of **capiō**.

216. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis, *who? which? what?*

SINGULAR

	Masculine	*Feminine*		*Neuter*
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae		quid (quod)
GEN.	cuius	cuius	adjective only	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui		cui
ACC.	quem	quam		quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā		quō

PLURAL

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

1. **Quis hoc fēcit?** *who did this?*
2. **Quid fēcistī?** *what did you do?*

Used as an interrogative pronoun.

3. **Quī (quis) vir hoc fēcit?** *what man did this?*
4. **Quam urbem vidēs?** *what city do you see?*
5. **Quod dōnum amat puer?** *what gift does the boy like?*

Used as an interrogative adjective.

a. Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. **Quis** is sometimes used for **quī**.

b. When used as a pronoun, **quis** and **quid** are used in place of **quī** and **quod**. As a pronoun it has no feminine forms in the singular.

218. VOCABULARY

audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus, *hear.*
mūniō, īre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *fortify.*
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,[1] *come.*
pūniō, īre, pūnīvī, pūnītus, *punish.*
cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., *custom, habit.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, cry.*
labor, ōris, m., *work, labor.*
iūdicium, ī, n., *trial, judgment.*
undique, adv., *from all sides.*

219. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem perīculō līberābit. 2. Iste mīles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūrātiō est facta. 4. Helvētiī ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220. EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīris; audiētur; vēnerātis. 2. Mūniēbātur; pūnīvistī; pūnītae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

[1] See page 49, footnote.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs mīsimus audiuntur. 5. Cōnsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quis tēlīs vulnerātus est? Mīles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdicium undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant audītī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one[1] who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that[2] we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

221. Ea cōnsilia sunt Helvētiīs per nūntiōs nūntiāta, et Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Coniūrātiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī[3] eius poena fuit. Quam[4] ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam (*his*) familiam et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

[1] See page 107, footnote 2. [2] Is this a relative or a demonstrative? [3] See 183, 2. [4] **quam ob rem**, *therefore, wherefore.*

ē perīculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs[1] per eius fugam incitātī sunt multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs cōgere coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorīx mortuus[2] est, et dē eius morte multī rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs fuērunt.

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222. THE STEM ENDS IN **-u-**

	cāsus, m., *chance, misfortune*	**cornū**, n., *horn, wing*	CASE ENDINGS SINGULAR *Masculine*	*Neuter*
	Stem **cāsu-**	Stem **cornu-**		
	Base **cās-**	Base **corn-**		
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR		
NOM.	**cāsus**	**cornū**	**-us**	**-ū**
GEN.	**cāsūs**	**cornūs**	**-ūs**	**-ūs**
DAT.	**cāsuī (ū)**	**cornū**	**-uī (ū)**	**-ū**
ACC.	**cāsum**	**cornū**	**-um**	**-ū**
ABL.	**cāsū**	**cornū**	**-ū**	**-ū**
	PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL	
NOM.	**cāsūs**	**cornua**	**-ūs**	**-ua**
GEN.	**cāsuum**	**cornuum**	**-uum**	**-uum**
DAT.	**cāsibus**	**cornibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
ACC.	**cāsūs**	**cornua**	**-ūs**	**-ua**
ABL.	**cāsibus**	**cornibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

1. A few words of this declension have **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural.
2. **Domus**, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 476.)

[1] *officers, magistrates*, nom. plur. [2] **mortuus est**, *died.*

223. RULE. — **Gender.** — *Nearly all nouns of the fourth declension in* **-us** *are masculine; those in* **-ū** *are neuter.*

1. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few other nouns are *feminine*.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis**, *brave army;* **tua manus**, *your hand;* **cornū dextrum**, *right wing*.

225. VOCABULARY

cāsus, **ūs**, m., *a falling, chance, misfortune*.
domus, **ūs**, f., *house, home*.
exercitus, **ūs**, m., *army*.
manus, **ūs**, f., *hand, band* (of men).
portus, **ūs**, m., *harbor*.
cornū, **ūs**, n., *horn, wing* (of army).
ā dextrō cornū, *on the right wing*.
ā sinistrō cornū, *on the left wing*.
conveniō, **īre**, **convēnī**, **conventum**, *come together, assemble*.
deus, **ī**, m., *god*.

Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)

226. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs mīlitum audīvit? 2. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Prīncipis est cōnsuētūdō eōs quī coniūrātiōnem faciunt pūnīre. 5. Quam urbem mūnient et quī eam dēfendent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illī pūnītī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that[1] Caesar has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished.

227. EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercituī; manuum. 2. Manūs equitum ad exercitum vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portum nāvēs hostium missae sunt. 4. Quī mīlitēs in dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōnsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī quī ad Caesarem vēnerant eī cāsum exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbis conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī in sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dīmicāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitibus vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfendimus magnum portum habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the hôuses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which[2] the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

[1] Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? [2] *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

228. Review of the Four Conjugations

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27:

dūcō	audiō	iaciō	coepī
trādūcō	permoveō	fugiō	nūntiō
veniō	pōnō	faciō	ēripiō
conveniō	careō	interficiō	cōgō
mittō	vincō	dīcō	cōgnōscō
dēbeō	relinquō	iubeō	discēdō
cupiō	contendō	appellō	līberō
capiō	gerō	cōnstituō	pūniō
prohibeō	incolō	dēfendō	mūniō

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes **trāns** and **con**, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether **cupiō** belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

229. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the first person, **interficiō** in the second person, **mūniō** in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of **dō**,

iubeō, cōgnōscō, veniō. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

230. Examine the following:

1. **Mīles gladium habet,**
2. **Mīlitī est gladius,** } *the soldier has a sword.*

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of **est**. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

231. RULE. — **Dative of Possession.** — *The dative is used with* **est, sunt,** *etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

232. REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

I. 1. Facient; convocābāmur; cōgēminī. 2. Audiēbāris; capiēris; caperis. 3. Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis. 4. Missum erat; mīserat; coepistī. 5. Pōnētis; capiēs; appellābitis. 6. Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur. 7. Relīquerātis; relinquent; dictum erat. 8. Līberātae sunt; habuerās; contendēbātis. 9. Ēripiēris; trādūcētur; monentur. 10. Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; pūnīris; cōgitur.

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall conquer; they have conquered; you were conquering. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

233. EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus amīcus domum habet. 2. Meō amīcō est domus. 3. Helvētiī, quōrum castra vidētis, ad moenia oppidī mox venient. 4. Exercitus magnus Caesarī fuit. 5. Caesar magnum exercitum habuit. 6. Magnam frūmentī cōpiam habent. 7. Magna frūmentī cōpia eīs est. 8. Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent. 9. Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs. 10. Mīlitī pulchrum gladium dedit.

II. 1. The farmer has[1] a horse. 2. They have[1] friends. 3. The soldiers will besiege Rome. 4. He had[1] a book. 5. Who has come to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

LESSON 39

IRREGULAR VERB eō. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER

234. IRREGULAR VERB eō, *go*

PRIN. PARTS: **eō, īre, iī, itum**[2]

Learn all tenses of the indicative of **eō** (500).

1. Notice that the -i-, the present stem of **eō**, changes to -e- before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?

[1] Express this idea in two ways in Latin. [2] See page 49, footnote.

2. Observe that the future indicative **ībō** is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is **īre**. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

235. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns:

	Singular	Plural	
First Declension	-ae	-īs	**Rōmae**, *in Rome.* **Athēnīs**, *in Athens.*
Second Declension	-ī	-īs	**Corinthī**, *at* or *in Corinth.* **Delphīs**, *at* or *in Delphi.*
Third Declension	-ī(e)	-ibus	**Carthāginī**, *at* or *in Carthage.* **Trallibus**, *at* or *in Tralles.*

2. **Domī**, *at home;* **humī**, *on the ground;* **rūrī**, *in the country*, are also locative forms.

3. To express the idea of *at* or *in* for other words than the names of towns use the preposition **in** and the ablative; *i.e*, **in urbe est**, *he is in the city;* **in Ītaliā sunt**, *they are in Italy.*

236. Examine the following:

1. **Venit**, *he comes*
   - **ad pontem**, *to the bridge.*
   - **in Ītaliam**, *to* or *into Italy.*
   - **Rōmam**, *to Rome.*
   - **domum**, *home.*
   - **rūs**, *to* or *into the country.*

2. **Exit,** *he goes*
- (ab) (dē) **ex oppidō,** *from the town.*
- (ab) (dē) **ex Ītaliā,** *from Italy.*
- **Athēnīs,** *from Athens.*
- **domō,** *from home.*
- **rūre,** *from the country.*

a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and **domus** and **rūs**, while a preposition (**in, ad, ab, dē, ex**) is used with other words.

237. RULE. — **Expressions of Place.**

1. Place *Where.* Ablative with **in.**

   But, Locative with names of towns, **domus, humus,** and **rūs.**

2. Place *To which.* Accusative with **ad** or **in.**

   But, Accusative without a preposition with names of towns, **domus, humus,** and **rūs.**

3. Place *From which.* Ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex.**

   But, Ablative without a preposition with names of towns, **domus, humus,** and **rūs.**

238. VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum (plur.), f., *Athens.*
Carthāgō, inis, f., *Carthage.*
Corinthus, ī, f. (28, 2), *Corinth.*
Delphī, ōrum (plur.), m., *Delphi.*
equitātus (eques), **ūs,** m., *cavalry.*
eō, īre, iī, itum, *go.*
exeō (**ex** + **eō**), **īre, exiī, exitūrus,** *go forth, leave.*
trānseō (**trāns** + **eō**), **īre, trānsiī, trānsitūrus,** *go over, go across, cross.*
impetus, ūs, m., *attack.*
impetum faciō in (with acc.), *make an attack upon.*

239. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfendentur. 2. Legiōnēs populī Rōmānī in hīberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus nāvium mīlitibus, quī in hībernīs erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt multae manūs fortium mīlitum. 5. Propter cāsum nostrōrum hostēs laetī erant.

II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are assembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen. 4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

240. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ierat; ībunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exībātis; īmus; iimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā[1]; Rōmā; domō. 4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāginī; Athēnīs; domī. 5. Cōnsul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsīre iussit. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus līberābit. 8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnīs bellum geret. 9. Helvētiī ē fīnibus exīre parant, et exercitum flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

II. 1. From Greece; out of Corinth; from home. 2. To Athens; to the city; into the country; into the province. 3. In Rome; in Italy; at home; at Delphi. 4. We ought to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made an attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from the banks by the enemy.

[1] *of Rome.* **Rōmā** is in apposition with **urbe.**

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (485), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	**ūnus**, *one*	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**trēs**, *three*	**tria**
GEN.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**trium**	**trium**
DAT.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**tribus**	**tribus**
ACC.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**trēs**, **trīs**	**tria**
ABL.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**tribus**	**tribus**

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	**duo**, *two*	**duae**	**duo**
GEN.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
DAT.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
ACC.	**duōs**, **duo**	**duās**	**duo**
ABL.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	**mīlle**, *thousand*	**mīllia** (**mīlia**)
GEN.	**mīlle**	**mīllium** (**mīlium**)
DAT.	**mīlle**	**mīllibus** (**mīlibus**)
ACC.	**mīlle**	**mīllia** (**mīlia**)
ABL.	**mīlle**	**mīllibus** (**mīlibus**)

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae**, *four girls;* **septem puerōrum**, *of seven boys.*

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mīlle** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally used as an adjective: **mīlle mīlitēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem mīllia mīlitum**, *seven thousands of soldiers, seven thousand soldiers.*

244. Examine the following:

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Ītaliā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy.*
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quīnque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep.*

a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **quīnque pedēs**, extent of *space.*

245. RULE. — **Extent of Time and Space.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

246. VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f., *height, depth.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *a breaking out, a sally.*
incendō, ere, incendī, incēnsus, *set fire to, burn.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain.*
mercātor, ōris, m., *merchant, trader.*
socius, ī, m., *companion, ally.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace.*
mīlle passūs, *a thousand paces, a* (Roman) *mile;* **mīllia passuum**, *miles.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*

247. EXERCISES

I. 1. Centum vīgintī mercātōrum; mīlle trecentīs sex et quadrāgintā mīlitibus. 2. Trium exercituum; duābus legiōnibus; quattuor equōrum. 3. Mūrus quem vidēs sex pedēs altus est. 4. Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant. 5. Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat. 6. Equitēs duās hōrās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant. 7. Socii

Helvētiōrum decem mīllia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vīcōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria mīllia mīlitum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfectī erant. 10. Id flūmen centum pedēs lātum et duodēvīgintī altum fuit. 11. Hīc collis septuāgintā quīnque pedēs altus est. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet high, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and hastened to Rome. 5. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

248. FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in -ē-

	diēs, m., *day*		**rēs**, f., *thing*			
	Stem **diē-**		Stem **rē-**			
	Base **di-**		Base **r-**			
					CASE ENDINGS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēī [1]	diērum	reī [1]	rērum	-ĕī	-ērum
DAT.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ĕī	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

[1] In the genitive singular the case ending is -ēī if the base ends in a vowel, -ĕī if the base ends in a consonant.

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. RULE. — **Gender.** — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except* **diēs**, *which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following:

1. **Satis cibī habēmus**, *we have enough* (of) *food.*
2. **Nihil novī est**, *there is nothing* (of) *new* (*newness, novelty*).
3. **Ūnus ex mīlitibus vulnerātus est**, *one of the soldiers was wounded.*
4. **Quīdam dē nostrīs cecidērunt**, *some of our men fell.*

a. Observe that the genitives **cibī**, **novī**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is or is not taken. Note that in 1 and 2 *of* is not used in English.

b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quīdam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. RULE. — **Genitive of the Whole** ("**Partitive Genitive**"). — *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is* (*or is not*) *taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives* (*except numerals*), *and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends.*

252. VOCABULARY

aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
diēs, ēī, m., *day.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, circumstance, affair.*
nihil (indecl. noun), *nothing.*
satis (indecl. noun), *enough.*
nihil reliquī, *nothing left.*
cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *accomplish, finish, wear out.*
pūblicus, a, um, *public.*
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *the state, the commonwealth.*

253. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī mīllia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōnsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētiī cum omnibus impedīmentīs domum īre coāctī sunt. 5. Equitātus quīndecim hōrīs Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched[1] seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Helvētiīs, quī flūmen trānsībant, pugnābat. 4. Vīcōs et aedificia incenderant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Prīmā lūce paucī dē eōrum mīlitibus iter nōn cōnfēcerant. 6. Fīnitimī eīs satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diēbus magnō perīculō līberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātīs eō diē eandem rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Helvētiōs, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Prīmam aciem iacere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have[2] nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

[1] iter faciō. [2] Express this idea in some other way than by using habent.

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 451.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī ē fīnibus suīs[1] exīre cōnstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua[1] omnia ad[2] duodecim, vīcōs ad[2] quadringentōs, rēliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.[3] Itaque et domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt[4] et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque[5] domō efferre iubent.[3] Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrīgī fīnitimī idem facere et ē fīnibus exīre cōnstituunt.[3] Bōiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīcī et sociī erant.

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are: *positive*, *comparative*, *superlative*.

1. The positive is the simple form of the adjective: **cārus**, *dear*.

[1] *their*. [2] *about* (with numerals). [3] The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. [4] From **tollō**. [5] Acc. of **quisque**.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter: **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, cārior, cārius, *dearer.*

3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-issimus, -issima, -issimum**: **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cārissimus, a, um**, *dearest.*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE
	M. and F.	*N.*	
lātus, a, um (lāt-), *wide*	**lātior,** *wider*	**lātius,**	**lātissimus, a, um,** *widest*
fortis, e (fort-), *brave*	**fortior,** *braver*	**fortius,**	**fortissimus, a, um,** *bravest*
vēlōx (vēlōc-), *swift*	**vēlōcior,** *swifter*	**vēlōcius,**	**vēlōcissimus, a, um,** *swiftest*

257. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (62). The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
NOM.	**lātior**	**lātius**	**lātiōrēs**	**lātiōra**
GEN.	**lātiōris**	**lātiōris**	**lātiōrum**	**lātiōrum**
DAT.	**lātiōrī**	**lātiōrī**	**lātiōribus**	**lātiōribus**
ACC.	**lātiōrem**	**lātius**	**lātiōrēs** (īs)	**lātiōra**
ABL.	**lātiōre**	**lātiōre**	**lātiōribus**	**lātiōribus**

1. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare **altus** (alt-), *high, deep*; **potēns** (potent-), *powerful*; **brevis** (brev-), *short.* Decline in the comparative.

259. Examine the following:

1. **Hīc mōns altior quam ille est,** } *this mountain is higher*
2. **Hīc mōns altior illō est,** } *than that.*
3. **Montem altiōrem quam illum videō,** } *I see a mountain*
4. **Montem altiōrem illō videō,** } *higher than that.*

Observe that in 1 **quam** is used and **ille** is nominative, while in 2 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative. So in 3 **quam** is used and **illum** is accusative, while in 4 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative.

The omission of **quam** is commonest in negative sentences and in relative clauses. Thus, **vir quō nēmō fortior erat**, *a man than whom none was (ever) braver.*

260. RULE. — **Ablative of Comparison.** — *After comparatives with* **quam** *the same case is used after* **quam** *as before it. After comparatives without* **quam** *the ablative is used.*

261. VOCABULARY

vēlōx, vēlōcis, *swift.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
turpis, e, *ugly, disgraceful, infamous.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*
quam, adv., *than.*
latus,[1] **lateris**, n., *side, flank.*
lātitūdō, inis, f., *width, breadth.*
perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventum, *come up, arrive, reach.*
obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *besiege.*

262. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare oppugnātum erat. 2. Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs labōrābunt. 3. Incolās quī ex oppidō exiērunt laudat. 4. Quī clāmōribus Gallōrum terrentur? 5. Tempus annī bellō nōn erat idōneum. 6. Ille mōns mīlle pedēs altus est.

[1] Do not confuse with the adjective **lātus, a, um.**

II. 1. On that day Caesar left Rome. 2. That day was the end of the war. 3. He left the city and hastened into Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263. EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī fīnitimīs fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius quam Rhodanus est. 3. Rōmānī multīs rēbus potentiōrēs illīs gentibus erant. 4. Equōs vēlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vīdimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad fīnēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus quīngentōs pedēs lātum est. 9. Vēlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vīdī. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātissima erat.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher (pulchr-), *beautiful* [*eager*	pulchr**ior**, pulchr**ius**	pulcher**rimus**, **a**, **um**
ācer (acr-), *keen*,	ācr**ior**, ācr**ius**	ācer**rimus**, **a**, **um**

265. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus, a, um** to the base. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
similis, e (simil-), *like*	**similior, ius**	**simillimus, a, um**
dissimilis, e (dissimil-), *unlike*	**dissimilior, ius**	**dissimillimus, a, um**
facilis, e (facil-), *easy*	**facilior, ius**	**facillimus, a, um**
difficilis, e (difficil-), *hard*	**difficilior, ius**	**difficillimus, a, um**
gracilis, e (gracil-), *slender*	**gracilior, ius**	**gracillimus, a, um**
humilis, e (humil-), *low*	**humilior, ius**	**humillimus, a, um**

266. Examine the following:

1. **Hīc mōns centum pedibus altior quam ille est,** *this mountain is a hundred feet higher* (literally, *higher by a hundred feet*) *than that.*
2. **Hoc iter multō facilius illō est,** *this road is much easier* (literally, *easier by much*) *than that.*

Observe that the ablatives **centum pedibus** and **multō** express the *measure of difference* between the objects compared.

267. RULE. — **Measure of Difference.** — *The Measure of Difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. **Hīc mōns altissimus est,** *this mountain is very* (or *exceedingly*) *high.*
2. **Hīc mōns altior est,** *this mountain is rather* (or *too*) *high.*

269. VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*
lēnis, e, *smooth, gentle.*
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *await, wait for, expect.*
ibi, adv., *in that place, there.*
animus, ī, m., *mind, courage, spirit, disposition.*
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, during.*
certiōrem eum faciō, with **dē** and abl., *I inform him* (lit., *I make him more certain*) *of.*

270. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar in Galliā multās legiōnēs habuit. 2. Quod cōnsilium tūtius hōc est? 3. Nāvēs quibus mīlitēs missī erant vēlōcissimae sunt. 4. Helvētiī fīnitimōs multōs annōs fīnibus prohibuerant. 5. Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.

II. 1. There are not enough horsemen in Rome. 2. Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul. 3. Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days. 4. Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.

271. EXERCISES

I. 1. Impetum hostium exspectāre difficillimum est. 2. Rīpae huius flūminis lēniōrēs sunt. 3. Lēgātus multō fortior meō frātre est. 4. Pōns inter duo oppida factus erat. 5. Omnium urbis viārum haec multō brevissima est. 6. Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt. 7. Iter inter altōs montēs angustum et difficillimum erat. 8. Collis in quō Rōmānī castra posuerant centum pedibus altior illō est quī ad vīcum est. 9. Dē cāsū exercitūs

lēgātōs certiōrēs fēcit. 10. Quī eōs certiōrēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There[1] was there an exceedingly high mountain. 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects[2] is rather like[3] Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Possum

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um, *good*	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um, *bad*	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um, *great*	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um, *small*	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um, *much*	—— plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multī, ae, a, *many*	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris, *old*	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis, *old* (476)	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e, *young*	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
superus, a, um, *above*	superior, superius, *higher*	suprēmus, summus, *highest*
īnferus, a, um, *below*	īnferior, īnferius, *lower*	īnfimus, īmus, *lowest.*

[1] See note on 49, II. 3. [2] rēs. [3] See 163.

273. **Plūs**, *more*, is not declined like other comparatives (257). Wherein is the difference?

	Singular		Plural	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs, īs	plūra
Abl.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus

274. **Possum** (**pot**(**is**) + **sum**), *I am able, I can.*

Prin. Parts: **possum, posse, potuī,** ——

Learn all tenses of the indicative (497).

Observe

1. That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
2. That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (496).

275. VOCABULARY

fidēs, eī, f., *trust, confidence.*
potestās, ātis, f. (**possum**), *power, authority.*
nōbilis, e, *well known, noble.*
amplus, a, um, *large, extensive, ample.*
permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus, *give up, intrust, permit.*
accēdō, ere, **accessī**, **accessūrus** (with **ad** and the acc.), *go* or *come near, approach.*
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither.*
quam maximus, *the greatest possible, as large as possible* (with superlatives **quam** has the force "as possible").

276. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficilius iter facere coēgit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallōs dē eius cōnsiliīs certiōrēs fēcērunt. 4. Paucī dē nostrīs ad flūmen lātissimum pervēnerant. 5. Urbs cuius moenia obsēdimus lātior mīlle passibus illō oppidō est.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall. 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days. 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech. 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277. EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accēdere ad vīcum, quī summō[1] in monte positus est, nōn possunt. 4. Omnia in fidem[2] et potestātem populī Rōmānī illae nātiōnēs permīsērunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbilissimōs cīvitātis mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme facta sunt. 7. Legiōnem summum collem mūnīre iubet. 8. Helvētiī ob flūmina maxima trānsīre in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annīs maior nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house. 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant. 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

[1] *on the highest part of, on the top of.* Certain other adjectives also may be used to denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant, as **īmus**, *the lowest part of, the bottom of;* **medius**, *the middle of;* **extrēmus**, *the end of.*

[2] *keeping, protection.*

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings:

turpis	pessimus	ācrior	minimus
asper	tūtior	īmus	superus
amplus	vēlōx	similis	plūrēs
nōbilis	vetustior	maior	senior

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding **-ē** to the base.

Adjective	Base	Adverb
cārus, *dear*	cār-	cārē, *dearly*
pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchr-	pulchrē, *beautifully*
miser, *wretched*	miser-	miserē, *wretchedly*

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems ending in **-nt** drop **-t**.

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
fortis, *brave*	forti-	fortiter, *bravely*
prūdēns, *wise*	prūdent-	prūdenter, *wisely*

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular*, in others the *neuter accusative singular*, serves as an adverb:

prīmus, *first*	prīmō, *at first*
multus, *much*	multum, *much*
facilis, *easy*	facile, *easily*

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the

superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final **-us** to **-ē** (note one exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus	cārē, *dearly*	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, *beautifully*	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, *well*	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, *easily*	facilius	facillimē
ācer	ācriter, *eagerly*	ācrius	ācerrimē
multus	multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
magnus	magnopere, *greatly*	magis	maximē

Form and compare the adverbs of these adjectives in 278: turpis, amplus, nōbilis, pessimus, vēlōx, plūrēs.

281. VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, do.*

īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *draw up, form, arrange.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *manage, direct, administer.*

plūrimum possum, *I am very powerful, have most influence.*

agmen, agminis, n. (agō), *army* (on the march), *column;* **novissimum agmen,** *the rear;* **prīmum agmen,** *the van.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next* (163).

apud, prep. with acc., *among, with, near.*

quārtus, a, um, *fourth.*

282. EXERCISES

I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx plūrimum poterat. 2. Rēs ab imperātōre optimē administrābantur. 3. Helvētiī multō ācrius quam fīnitimī cum hostibus contendēbant. 4. Caesar aciem summō in colle īnstrūxit et impetum exspectāvit. 5. Vīcus ad quem prīmum agmen pervēnerat

proximus erat fīnibus Gallōrum. 6. Omnia quae lēgātus iusserat mīlitēs bene ēgērunt. 7. Ubi[1] Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervēnit, ācerrimē cum hostibus equitēs pugnābant. 8. Summus collis ā peditibus nostrīs occupātus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetorīgis fīliam et ūnum ē fīliīs nostrī cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. 10. Nostrī quam fortissimē pugnāvērunt, sed expugnāre oppidum nōn potuērunt. 11. Nostrī sociī apud fīnitimōs ob amīcitiam populī Rōmānī plūrimum possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there[2] on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long[3] marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.[4] 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

[1] *when.* [2] **eō** (adv.). [3] **magnus.** [4] See 147, 3.

Agmen

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

The Two Routes by which the Helvetii could leave their Country

283. Duōbus itineribus Helvētiī domō[1] exīre potuērunt. Ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque[2] vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem Helvētiī comparāvērunt et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (486): **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **suī**, *of himself, herself, itself.*

285. Use of the Personal Pronouns

1. The pronoun of the first person is **ego**, *I*; of the second person **tū**, *you*; of the third person **is, ea, id**, *he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.

a. **Tē vocō**, *I'm calling you.* ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore **ego** is not used.)

b. **Ego tē vocō**, *I* (emphatic) *am calling you.* (Such emphasis

[1] Why is there no preposition? See 237, 3. [2] *I.e.* the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation, "It is I who am calling you.")

c. **Ego eum laudō; is mē culpat,** *I praise him; he blames me.*

It will be recalled that in the exercises of the preceding lessons the subjects of the verbs, when pronouns, were not expressed. Why is it impossible to omit the personal pronouns as subjects in English as often as in Latin?

286. USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it stands (see also 428). It is never in the nominative case and so is never subject.

S. 1.	I praise *myself*	PL. We praise *ourselves*
2.	You praise *yourself*	You praise *yourselves*
3.	He praises *himself* She praises *herself*	They praise *themselves*

2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, **ego** and **tū** (except in the nominative case), are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, **suī**, *of himself, herself, itself.*

S. 1.	**mē laudō,** *I praise myself*	PL. **nōs laudāmus,** *we praise ourselves*
2.	**tē laudās,** *you praise yourself*	**vōs laudātis,** *you praise yourselves*
3.	**sē laudat,** *he praises himself*	**sē laudant,** *they praise themselves*

3. Review 190. Do not confuse **is** with **suī**. **Suī** regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands.

a. **Vir sē videt**, *the man sees himself.*
b. **Vir eum videt**, *the man sees him* (some one else).

4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse **ipse** with **sē**. **Ipse** is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs. It may be used in any case.

a. **Vir ipse eum vīdit**, *the man himself saw him*, or *the man saw him himself.*
b. **Vir sē vīdit**, *the man saw himself.*
c. **Virum ipsum vīdimus**, *we saw the man himself.*

287. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them; **tēcum**, instead of **cum tē**; **nōbīscum**, instead of **cum nōbīs**. So also **quibuscum**, *with whom*, instead of **cum quibus**.

288. Examine the following:

1. **Ego, quī haec faciō, tuus pater sum**, *I, who do this, am your father.*
2. **Vōs, quī haec facitis, meī amīcī estis**, *you, who do this, are my friends.*

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289. VOCABULARY

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *give up, surrender.*
committō, ere, commīsī, commissus, *intrust, commit;* **proelium committō**, *begin battle.*
recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus, *take back, receive;* **sē recipere**, *retreat, betake one's self.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *provisions, supplies.*
spēs, eī, f., *hope.*
sine, prep. with abl., *without.*
ante, adv., and prep. with acc., *before.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **mē recipiō**, *I retreat*	**nōs recipimus**, *we retreat*
2. **tē recipis**, *you retreat*	**vōs recipitis**, *you retreat*
3. **sē recipit**, *he retreats*	**sē recipiunt**, *they retreat*

290. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis reī pūblicae spēs in mīlitum virtūte posita[1] est. 2. Brevī tempore quattuor ē prīncipibus Rōmam mittentur. 3. Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō. 4. Haec rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostrīs summō in colle vidēbātur.

II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291. EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine vōbīs miserrimī erimus. 2. Ego sum mīles, tū es nauta. 3. Nōbīs est satis cibī. 4. Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 5. Magnā cum celeritāte in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus. 6. Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō. 7. Ubi Gallī ad eōrum fīnēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnēs ad[2] sē convocārī iubet. 9. Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt. 10. Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis. 11. Quis tēcum Athēnās ībit?

II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

[1] *depends.* [2] *before.*

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	**meus,**[1] **a, um,** *my, mine*	**noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our, ours*
2D PER.	**tuus, a, um,** *your, yours*	**vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your, yours*
3D PER.	**suus, a, um,** *his* (own), *her* (own), *its* (own)	**suus, a, um,** *their* (own), *their*

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun *to which they belong*, and not *with the noun to which they refer*. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.

a. **Suum patrem puella vīdit,** *the girl saw her father.*
b. **Vestrum amīcum vīdimus,** *we saw your* (plur.) ***friend.***
c. **Tuās fīliās vīdit,** *he saw your* (sing.) *daughters.*

2. **Suus, a, um,** is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of **is, eius,** *his, her, its;* **eōrum,** *their;* **eārum,** *their* (referring to feminine).

a. **Agricola suum equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his* (*i.e.* his own) *horse.*
b. **Agricola eius equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his* (some one else's, not the farmer's) *horse.*
c. **Agricola eōrum equōs laudat,** *the farmer praises their horses.*
d. **Agricolae suōs equōs laudant,** *the farmers praise their* (their own) *horses.*

[1] The vocative singular is **mī.**

294. Examine the following:

1. **Magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was a great help to our men* (literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).
2. **Tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit**, *he sent the third line as a relief* (literally, *for a relief*) *to our men.*

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsuī** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. This use of the dative is called the *dative of service* or *purpose.*

295. RULE. — **Dative of Service or Purpose.** — *The dative is used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it.*

296. SUMMARY

	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
FIRST PERSON	**ego**	**meī** [1]	**meus, a, um**, *my, mine* **noster, nostra, nostrum**, *our, ours*
SECOND PERSON	**tū**	**tuī** [1]	**tuus, a, um**, *your, yours* (sing.) **vester, vestra, vestrum**, *your, yours* (plur.)
THIRD PERSON	**is, ea, id**	**suī** [1]	**suus, a, um**, *his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own* (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of **is, ea, id.**

[1] Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns?

297. VOCABULARY

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus, *go back, return.*
dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *send off, dismiss, let go.*
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *give back, return, render.*
sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *hold up, withstand, sustain.*
opus, operis, n., *work, labor.*
tamen, adv., *yet, however, nevertheless.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, advantage, benefit.*

298. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi difficile est. 2. Posteā in silvās sēsē recēpērunt. 3. Nōs dē proeliō certiōrēs faciet. 4. Caesar eōs sibi arma dēdere cōgit. 5. Mīlitēs sē laudābant, eōs autem culpābant. 6. Nōbīs Rōmae satis cibī est.

II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

299. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar equitātum auxiliō suīs mīsit. 2. Tuī amīcī tibi, meī mihi sunt cārissimī. 3. Labiēnus ūnum latus castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Haec rēs nostrīs magnō ūsuī erat. 5. Impetum sustinēre nōn poterant; itaque in suōs fīnēs rediērunt. 6. Hostēs Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt. 7. Propter operis magnitūdinem flūmen trānsīre Helvētiī nōn potuērunt. 8. Caesar eius mīlitēs dīmīsit, suōs autem in castrīs tenuit. 9. Cōnsul in fīnēs Helvētiōrum quam maximīs itineribus contendere cōnstituit. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs adventum suum exspectāre iussit

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to return all his possessions[1] to him. 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings (see 490):

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
quis	**qua**	**quid** (**quod**), *somebody*, *anybody*
aliquis	**aliqua**	**aliquid** (**aliquod**), *some one*
quisquam		**quicquam**, *any one* (at all) (no plur.)
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quoddam**, **quiddam**, *a certain one*
quisque	**quaeque**	**quidque**, **quodque**, *each one*, *every one*

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**.
3. In the neuter the **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, the **quod**-forms as adjectives.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **Quis**, *some one*, *any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**: **sī quid hīs accidit**, *if anything happens to them*.

[1] Express by the neuter plural of the proper possessive adjective.

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all, every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences: **nec quisquam hoc facit**, *and nobody does this.*
4. **Aliquis**, *some one or other, some one*, denotes some one whose identity is unknown: **aliquis tibi haec dīxit**, *some one* (*I do not know who*) *told you this.*
5. **Quīdam** denotes some one whose identity is known but is not fully revealed: **quīdam haec mihi dīxit**, *some one* (*I know who, but I will not tell*) *told me this.*

302. Examine the following:

1. **Vir summae virtūtis fuit,**
2. **Vir summā virtūte fuit,**

} *he was a man of very great courage.*

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtūtis** and the ablative phrase **summā virtūte** describe the noun **vir**; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtūtis** and **virtūte**.

303. RULE. — **Descriptive Genitive and Ablative.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun,* **if itself modified by an adjective or genitive,** *may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by* **magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.**

304. VOCABULARY

dīligentia, ae, f., *carefulness, diligence, industry.*
grātia, ae, f., *favor, influence, kindness.*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people.*
aliēnus, a, um, *another's, strange, unfavorable.*
reperiō, īre, **repperī, repertus**, *find, discover, ascertain.*
sī, conj., *if.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

305. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesarī dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxilium, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitātuī magnō ūsuī fuit. 3. Legiōnī satis cibī nōn erat, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Gallī sē suaque omnia Rōmānīs dēdidērunt, quod magnitūdine eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before[1] him. 2. When he returned to Rome, he saw his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed hers.

306. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exīre iubent. 2. Sī quis eius fīliam laudat, laetus est. 3. Quīdam ex Gallīs multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorīx apud Helvētiōs magnā grātiā erat. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novī[2] repperit? 6. Līberī quīque[3] pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocātī erant. 7. Prīnceps propter dīligentiam magnae potestātis apud suōs fuit. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī aliēnō in locō proelium committent, vincentur. 10. Fīnitimī nostrī bonō animō[4] esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless she hears something good[2] about her son. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

[1] **ad.** [2] See 250, 2. [3] **quīque (quī + que) = et iī quī.** [4] **bonō animō,** *well disposed.*

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	pres. stem + **ns**[1]	wanting
Future	participial stem + **ūrus**	Gerundive. Pres. stem + **ndus**[1]
Perfect	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (491–495).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (479); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective.* As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

[1] **iō** verbs have a connecting vowel **e** before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns, audiendus.**

1. **Videō eum id agentem,** *I see him as* (*while*) *he* is doing *it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem,** *I saw him as he* was doing *it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem,** *I shall see him as he* will be doing *it*.

309. TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present:* representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
2. *Perfect:* representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
3. *Future:* expressing an action that is *subsequent to* (*not yet done at*) the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of **dō**, *give;* **videō**, *see;* **faciō**, *make, do;* **mūniō**, *fortify;* **eō**, *go*. (500.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples, which show the various relations that the participle expresses:

1. **Mīlitēs missōs nōn culpāvit,** *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (lit., *the soldiers sent*). This use is not common; a relative clause is generally used.
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs,** *I saw them as* (or *when*) *they were doing this.*
3. **Caesar cōnsul factus in Galliam contendit,** *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul*, etc.).
4. **Gallī hīs rēbus permōtī obsidēs mīsērunt,** *the Gauls, since*

(or *because*) *they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages* (literally, *the Gauls having been alarmed*, etc.).

5. **Orgetorīx damnātus interficiētur,** *if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed* (literally, *Orgetorix having been condemned will be killed*).

6. **Vulnerātus diū pugnābat,** *although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time* (literally, *having been wounded, he fought*).

7. **Multōs vīcōs captōs incendit,** *he captured and burned many villages* (literally, *he burned many captured villages*).

312. VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach.*

vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, earthworks.*

posterus, a, um, *next, following.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around.*

circumveniō, īre, circumvēnī, circumventus, *come around, surround.*

permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, *influence, arouse.*

ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead out.*

lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *attack, harass.*

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sequani* (a tribe of Gauls).

313. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīc grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. 2. Gallī cōnsilium cēpērunt quod Rōmānīs nōn grātum erat. 3. Sī quid reperītur, Caesarī semper nūntiātur. 4. Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat. 5. Hominēs summae virtūtis esse dīcuntur.

II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival. 2. The day that Caesar had appointed[1] with the ambassadors has come. 3. He ordered the hostages to come to him. 4. He carried all his possessions with him.

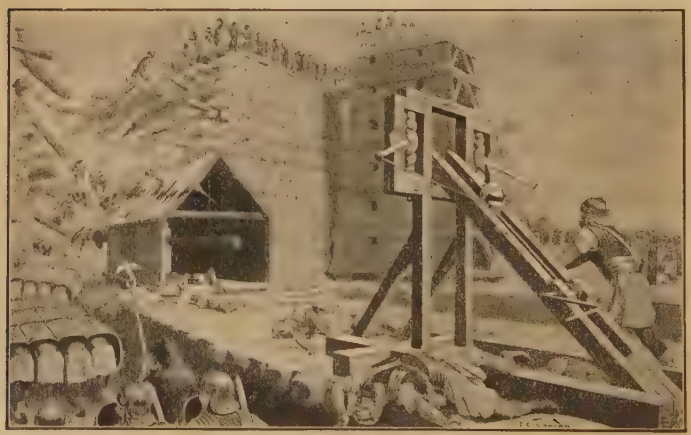
[1] **cōnstituō.**

314. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīs rēbus permōtī Rōmā exīre mātūrant. 2. In lēgātōs cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcentēs Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidī mūnientēs hostēs lacessent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vāllō et moenibus mūnītam obsidēre cōnstituērunt. 5. Caesar duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū lacessītus impetum sustinēre poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castrīs ēductās īnstrūxit. 7. Suum amīcum domō exeuntem videt. 8. Prīncipēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcerant certior factus est. 10. Lēgātus Gallōs quī castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed[1] of this, he hurried to Rome. 2. The general captured[2] their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing[3] the river. 4. If you are defeated,[4] you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Although we have been surrounded,[5] we will fight bravely.

[1] 311, 3. [2] 311, 7. [3] 311, 2. [4] 311, 5. [5] 311, 6.



A Siege

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. **Ablative Absolute.** — A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples:

1. **Caesar, Germānīs victīs, in hīberna vēnit,**	*after the Germans had been conquered,* *when he had conquered the Germans,* *after conquering the Germans,* *having conquered the Germans,* *now that the Germans had been conquered,* *the Germans having been conquered,*	*Caesar went into winter quarters.*
2. **Oppidō expugnātō, hostēs vincent,**	*if the town is captured,* *by capturing the town,* *since the town has been captured,* *the town having been captured,*	*they will conquer the enemy.*
3. **Nōbīs castra mūnientibus, Gallī pervēnērunt,**	*while we were fortifying the camp,* *as we were fortifying the camp,*	*the Gauls arrived.*

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānīs victīs, oppidō expugnātō, nōbīs mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause (the word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself). For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Gallī victī domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction would not be used, because it is possible to make **victī** agree with **Gallī**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives, or a substantive or pronoun and an adjective, are sometimes used in the ablative absolute construction.

Duce Caesare Rōmānī semper vincēbant,	lit. *Caesar (being) leader,* *under the leadership of Caesar,* *if Caesar was their leader,* *when Caesar was their leader,*	*the Romans always used to conquer.*

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered: **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit.**

318. VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*
sīgnum, ī, n., *sign, ensign, standard* (of the legion).
quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.*
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, raise, remove, take away.*
redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back.*
obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *possess, obtain, retain.*
convertō, ere, convertī, conversus, *turn about, change.*
sīgna convertō, *face about* (literally, *turn the standards about*).
occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus, *cut down, kill, slay.*
inquam, inquit, def., *say.*

319. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostrīs diū lacessītīs mīsit. 2. Caesar hostium clāmōribus permōtus mūnīre aditūs castrōrum coepit. 3. Cōnsul lēgātum sēcum redīre Rōmam iubēbit. 4. Equitātus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs lacessēbat. 5. Lēgātus nihil novī repperit.

II. 1. After the Helvetii had been defeated, they were compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320. EXERCISES

I. 1. Tē imperātōre, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, suōs in hīberna redūxit. 3. Hīs Caesarī nūntiātīs, quam prīmum Rōmā exiit. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suīs[1] ā Gallīs permōtīs[1] Caesar "Impetum" inquit "hostium exspectāre est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, sīgnīs conversīs, laces-

[1] Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesarī Rōmam redīre coāctō hoc proelium nūntiātum erat. 8. Hostēs, multīs occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omnī spē victōriae sublātā, Helvētiī cum mulieribus līberīsque domum rediērunt. 10. Oppidum quod Gallī mūnierant ā Rōmānīs incēnsum est.

II. 1. Having fought this battle,[1] Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When their leader had been killed, the Gauls surrendered to Caesar. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. If our villages are burned, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

Caesar attempts to check the March of the Helvetii. They send Ambassadors to Him

321. Hīs rēbus nūntiātīs Caesar mātūrat Rōmā exīre atque quam maximīs itineribus ad Genāvam contendit. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna.[2] Quā[3] rē prōvinciam tōtam praebēre quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam rescindī iubet. Ubi dē

[1] = *this battle having been made.* [2] *but* (only) *one.* [3] **Quā rē**, *therefore.*

eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Quī[1] lēgātī iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antīquīs Helvētiī cōnsulem Cassium occīderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inimīcō animō[2] iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem conloquiō cum lēgātīs cōnstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts:

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	Second one of the principal parts.	Change final **e** of present infinitive to **ī**, except in third conjugation, which changes final **ere** to **ī**.
FUTURE	Future active participle and **esse**.	Supine in **-um** (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and **īrī**.
PERFECT	Perfect stem + **isse**.	Perfect passive participle and **esse**.

[1] The relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence where English uses a demonstrative; hence **Quī lēgātī** = *these ambassadors*. [2] See 303.

1. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (491–495).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

vinciō, *bind.*	**iaciō**, *throw.*
iubeō, *order.*	**appellō**, *name, call.*
relinquō, *leave.*	**vincō**, *conquer.*
sum, *I am* (496).	**eō**, *go* (500).

324. VOCABULARY

auctōritās, ātis, f., *reputation, influence, authority.*
littera, ae, f., *letter of the alphabet;* (plur.), *letter, document.*
rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *supplies of grain, provisions.*
cottīdiānus, a, um, *daily.*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall, perish, die.*
at, conj., *but.*
numquam, adv., *never.*

325. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī cōnsulem cōpiās īnstruentem lacessīvērunt. 2. Rōmānī, sīgnīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōnsule Helvētiī coniūrātiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī fīnitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostrī autem multās mulierēs captās domum mīsērunt.

II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy? 2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After a few had been slain, the army was led back to camp. 4. And so hope was taken away from the Gauls.

326. EXERCISES

I. 1. Scrībī; sustulisse; cāsūrum esse. 2. Īnstruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibērī. 3. Capī; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; mīsisse; redūcī. 5. Paucae dē fīliābus occīsae esse dīcuntur. 6. Numquam culpārī cupimus. 7. Gallī ā fīnitimīs cottīdiānīs proeliīs lacessītī ex suīs fīnibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās litterās scrīpsisse dīcēbātur. 9. Frūmentum ad Caesarem nāvibus portārī nōn poterat. 10. At decem ē nostrīs cecidisse in hōc proeliō dīcuntur

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be burned. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which instead of the original words or thoughts we have their substance (general sense) stated in the words of another.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated thus: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following:

DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
tū venīs, *you are coming.*	**dīcit tē venīre**, *he says that you are coming*, or *he says you are coming.*

Note

1. That the English generally expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. RULE. — **Indirect Discourse.** — *Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.*

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb, the perfect as *completed by* (*before*) *that time*, the future as *not yet begun at that time.*

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed:

Tense	Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
Present	**veniō**, *I am coming*	Present **videt mē venīre**, *he sees that I am coming* Past **vīdit mē venīre**, *he saw that I was coming*
Imperfect	**veniēbam**, *I was coming*	Present **audit mē vēnisse**, *he hears that I came*, or *have come*
Perfect Pluperfect	**vēnī**, *I have come, I came* **vēneram**, *I had come*	Past **audīvit mē vēnisse**, *he heard that I came*, or *had come*
Future	**veniam**, *I shall come*	Present **spērat mē ventūrum (esse)**, *he hopes that I shall come* Past **spērāvit mē ventūrum (esse)**, *he hoped that I should come*

Caution. — The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

331. VOCABULARY

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, believe, suppose.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *point out, show, mention.*
spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hope.*
respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsum, *answer, reply.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, know how*
trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, *give up, surrender, deliver.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*
complūrēs, a (ia), *a great many, very many.*

332. EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dīxit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Sē in cōnspectū suī[1] imperātōris pugnāvisse mīles exīstimāvit. 6. Armīs trāditīs, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūntiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditīs, in suam potestātem vēnisse. 8. Omnēs scīmus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātam esse. 9. Caesar suīs "Quis scit" inquit "hunc pontem facere?" 10. Imperātōrī nūntiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgātī respondērunt "Nōs ā fīnitimīs nostrīs diū lacessimur."

II. 1. The gods will give us help. 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest[2] courage. 4. I hope many have not fallen. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, "I hope that they will retreat."

[1] The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement usually refer to the subject of the main verb of "saying," "thinking," etc.

[2] Do not use **maximus**. See 302, 1.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH **ūtor, fruor**, ETC.

333. Deponent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows:

	PRESENT IND.	PRESENT INF.	PERFECT IND.
1ST CONJ.	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum, *I urge, encourage*
2D CONJ.	vereor	verērī	veritus sum, *I fear*
3D CONJ.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum, *I follow*
4TH CONJ.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum, *I get possession of*

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (503.)

334. Deponent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a deponent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortātus mīlitēs proelium commīsit, *after encouraging* (literally, *having encouraged*) *his soldiers, he began the battle.*

336. Examine the following:

1. **Equīs ūtuntur**, *they use horses.*
2. **Vītā fruitur**, *he enjoys life.*

Observe that **equīs** and **vītā** are ablatives, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. RULE. — **Ablative with Certain Verbs.** — *The ablative is used with the deponent verbs* **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vēscor,** *and their compounds.*

338. VOCABULARY

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, employ.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, exhort.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *get possession of.*
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out, march, go.*
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *think, suppose.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *expel, drive away, rout.*
praesidium, ī, n., *defense, guard, garrison.*
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*

339. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Ītaliam itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coāctī sunt. 3. Lēgātī dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē multum frūmentum dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340. EXERCISES

I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtiminī; proficīscētur; proficīscitur. 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrum esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dīxit. 4. Cōnsul Rōmā profectus in fīnēs Helvētiōrum contendit. 5. Germānī ūsī esse parvīs equīs dīcuntur. 6. Cōnsul,

exercitū pulsō, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Commeātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēnsus est. 8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnīrī arbitrābantur. 9. Hostēs potīrī castrīs nōn posse dux vīdit. 10. Quattuor cohortēs praesidiō castrīs Labiēnus relīquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar got possession of the town. 2. For many days the horsemen who were following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions as a garrison. 4. Caesar set[1] out from the city, and began to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that Labienus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fīō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of **ferō** (502) and **fīō** (501).

1. Review the conjugation of **faciō** (177–179), and note that **fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō**.

342. Examine the following:

1. **Nōbīs persuādent**, *they persuade us.*
2. **Imperātōrī pāret**, *he obeys the commander.*

Observe that **nōbīs** and **imperātōrī** are datives, while the corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. RULE. — **Dative with Verbs.** — *Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

[1] Use a participle.

344. VOCABULARY

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus, *bring together, gather.*

nēmō, dat. **nēminī** (no gen. or abl.), *no one, nobody.*

moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, hinder.* [*resist, oppose.*

resistō, ere, restitī, —(w. dat.), **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *become, be made.*

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (w. dat.), *persuade.*

pāreō, ēre, pāruī, —(w. dat.), *obey.*

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (w. dat.), *harm, injure.*

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum (w. dat.), *believe, trust.*

345. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostrī equitātum Gallōrum tria mīllia passuum secūtī pepulērunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vīcō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnītā potītur. 4. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortātī nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castrīs ēductōs īnstruī iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving[1] the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346. EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedīmentīs in ūnum locum conlātīs, nostrī aciem īnstrūxērunt. 2. Pārēre suō quisque imperātōrī dēbet. 3. Ad castra multōs diēs morātī Gallī domum sē recēpērunt. 4. Id[2] persuādēre eīs numquam poterimus. 5. Nēmō eī haec dīcentī crēdit. 6. Oppidum expugnārī nōn poterat, quod

[1] Use the ablative absolute. [2] **Id** is the direct object of **persuādēre.** Translate: *of this.*

incolae nostrīs fortiter resistēbant. 7. Bonī librī nēminī nocent. 8. Caesar litterīs Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās (*Belgians*) contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrātiōnem facere. 9. Quārē (*therefore*) Caesar ad eōs proficīscī cōnstituit. 10. Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

II. 1. They inform Caesar; Caesar is informed by them. 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.[1] 5. I believe that they will injure us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

Caesar erects Fortifications. The Helvetii attempt to cross the Rhone, but are Repelled

347. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant mūrum pedēs sēdecim altum et fossam ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō et castellīs mūnītīs, facile eōs prohibēre potest. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum rediērunt, negat[2] sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Helvētiī autem, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, perrumpere cōnātī[3] operis mūnitiōne[4] et mīlitum tēlīs repulsī sunt.

[1] See 272, **senex**. [2] **negat sē posse**, *says he cannot* (literally, *denies that he can*). [3] From **cōnor**, a deponent verb. [4] Can you not infer its meaning from the verb **mūniō**?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (491–495); of **sum** (496); of **possum** (497); of **eō** (500); of **ferō** (502); of **fīō** (501).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular:

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
ACTIVE	**-em**	**-eam**	**-am, -iam**	**-iam**
PASSIVE	**-er**	**-ear**	**-ar, -iar**	**-iar**

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized:

When he *arrived* it was late.
He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.
He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are considered in this lesson and those following. Its uses in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following:

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amīcum videat,** *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur,** *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*

a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amīcum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing an affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) a negative clause.

b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. RULE. — **Subjunctive of Purpose.** — *Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with* **ut** *if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with* **nē** *if the purpose clause is negative.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of:

cōnficiō	dēdō	accēdō	proficīscor	ferō
committō	reddō	potior	ūtor	persuādeō
convertō	redeō	sequor	cadō	noceō
cohortor	redūcō	sciō	tollō	scrībō
agō	reperiō	trādō	obsideō	arbitror
crēdō	lacessō	pellō	īnstruō	fīō

353. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus līberīsque in ūnum locum convocātīs, Gallī impetum nostrōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. 2. Ubi Rōmānī ad eōrum fīnēs pervēnērunt, Gallī eīs restitērunt. 3. Lēgātus suum quemque cibum portāre iubet. 4. Orgetorīgis fīlia ā Rōmānīs capta certior fīēbat nēminem sibi nocitūrum (esse). 5. Quis ūtī illō equō potuit?

II. 1. He is informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad prīmum agmen proficīscitur ut suōs cohortētur. 2. Nostrī, sīgnīs conversīs, pellere Gallōs coepērunt. 3. Lēgātum in Galliam proficīscī iubet nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rēx paucōs diēs morātur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redīmus domum nē ab hostibus occīdāmur. 6. Gallī magnās cōpiās ūnum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manēsne domī ut litterās paucās scrībās? 8. Lēgātī in castra redeunt ut Caesarī persuādeant. 9. Nōs sequiminī ut aliquid reperiātis. 10. Arbitror Gallōs accēdere ut obsidēs reddant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar in order not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings **-m** (active), **-r** (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	
amāre	amārem	amārer
mūnīre	mūnīrem	mūnīrer
monēre	monērem	monērer

1. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (491–495); of **sum** (496); of **possum** (497); of **eō** (500); of **ferō** (502).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples:

They shouted (so) that he might hear.	(Purpose.)
They shouted so that he heard.	(Result.)
He was so tired that he could not go.	(Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so*, *such*, *in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following:

1. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Gallī trānsīre nōn possint**, *the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.*

2. **Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Gallī trānsīre nōn possent,** *the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.*
3. **Nostrī tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē reciperent,** *our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.*
4. **Tam graviter vulnerātī erant ut pugnāre nōn possent,** *they had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.*

a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with **ut** express the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.

b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect* (*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent subjunctive is *imperfect*.

c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not necessarily the same as that of the main verb.

These principles (*b*, *c*) are true also for purpose clauses.

358. RULE. — **Subjunctive of Result.** — *Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with* **ut** *if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with* **ut nōn** *if the result clause is negative.*

359. VOCABULARY

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *pursue, overtake.*
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, *advance, proceed.*
audeō, ēre, ausus[1] **sum**, *dare.*
accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus, *receive.*
castellum, ī, n., *fort, redoubt.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
calamitās, ātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*
tantus, a, um, *so great, such.*
tam, adv., *so* (with adjectives and adverbs).
ita, adv., *thus, so.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*

[1] A semi-deponent verb; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trānseunt ut eōrum fīnēs vāstent. 2. Vīcīs multīs et parvīs incēnsīs, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castrīs potīrī posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesarī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castrīs profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trānseuntēs impętum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. I am informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361. EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientīs cōnsequerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā mīlitibus mūnītur ut expugnārī nōn possit. 3. Omnēs quī trānsīre Rhodanum ausī sunt tēlīs et sagittīs vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Gallī ita operis magnitūdine permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellīs mūnīta est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellīs ita mūnīta est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum fīnēs decem diēs prōgressus multās cīvitātēs in dēditiōnem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenīre possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the depth of the river that they could not cross. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

LESSON 61

Volō. Nōlō. Mālō. RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

362. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (499). Observe that **nōlō** is a compound of **nōn** and **volō**, and **mālō** a compound of **magis**, *more* (shortened to **ma**), and **volō**. Note the irregularities in the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

363. Examine the following:

1. **Prīnceps lēgātōs mīsit ut pācem peterent,**
2. **Prīnceps lēgātōs mīsit quī pācem peterent,**

the chief sent ambassadors to ask for peace.

The English translation of these sentences is the same, and the verbs of the purpose clauses are subjunctive. In 2, however, **quī** is used instead of **ut** to emphasize the ambassadors as the persons who have the purpose to perform.

364. RULE. — **Relative Clause of Purpose.** — *Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion.*

365. VOCABULARY

petō, ere, petīvī (iī), petītus, *aim at, ask for, go to get.*

volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, wish, will.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer.*

impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus, *entangle, impede.*

praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus, *send ahead, dispatch.*

celeriter, adv. (**celer,** *swift*), *swiftly, quickly.*

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

dē tertiā vigiliā, *about the third watch* (a watch was equal to one fourth of the night).

366. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostrī tam ācriter pugnābant ut Helvētiī aliī aliam in partem fugerent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōnsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditiōne certior factus legiōnēs in hīberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallīs crēdere arbitrābātur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain. 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that they overtook the enemy. 3. They will not try to resist our soldiers. 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367. EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvultis; nōlumus. 2. Māvīs; nōlēs; mālunt. 3. Imperātor mīlitēs praemīsit quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multī esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redīre mālēbant. 6. Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum fīnēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impedītōs lacesserent praemīserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīxērunt[1] sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesar hīs rēbus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōnsequerentur praemīsit.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the senate. 4. The Helvetii

[1] Notice how the translation of the indicative, **dīxērunt**, differs from that of the subjunctive, **dīcerent**.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although[1] a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (491–495); of **sum** (496); of **eō** (500); of **ferō** (502); of **possum** (497); of **fīō** (501); of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (499).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following:

Direct Question	Indirect Question
Ubi sunt? *where are they?*	**Sciō ubi sint**, *I know where they are.*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*	**Vīdimus quid faceret**, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

[1] See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION	INDIRECT STATEMENT
Sciō quis veniat,	**Sciō eum venīre,**
I know who *is coming.*	*I know* (that) *he is coming.*

370. RULE. — **Indirect Question.** — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare:

He *comes* that I *may* see him.
He *came* that I *might* see him.

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows:

Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time.	Present Indicative, Perfect Indicative, sometimes, when it means *have*, Future Indicative, Future Perfect Indicative, Present Subjunctive, Perfect Subjunctive.

Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time.	Imperfect Indicative, Perfect Indicative, Pluperfect Indicative, Imperfect Subjunctive, Pluperfect Subjunctive.

373. Examine the following:

1.	**Vidēt**, *he sees*, **Vidēbit**, *he will see*, **Vīderit**, *he will have seen*,	**quid faciam**, *what I am doing.*
2.	**Vidēt**, *he sees*, **Vidēbit**, *he will see*, **Vīderit**, *he will have seen*,	**quid fēcerim**, *what I have done* (or *did*).
3.	**Vidēbat**, *he was seeing*, **Vīdit**, *he saw*, **Vīderat**, *he had seen*,	**quid facerem**, *what I was doing.*
4.	**Vidēbat**, *he was seeing*, **Vīdit**, *he saw*, **Vīderat**, *he had seen*,	**quid fēcissem**, *what I had done* (or *did*).

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. RULE. — **Sequence of Tenses.** — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined commonly by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause.

1. Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have, has*, . . ., is followed by a primary tense.

375. VOCABULARY

prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum, *go forward, advance.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *try, attempt.*
conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum, *speak together, confer.*
in animō habeō, mihi est in animō, *I have in mind, intend.*
explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*
in reliquum tempus, *for the future.*
inter sē dare, *to exchange, give each other.*
in flūmine pontem faciō, *build a bridge across the river.*
rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, *ask, beg.*
teneō, ēre, tenuī, —, *hold.*

376. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātōre ē proeliō discēdere audēbit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex castrīs ēductās īnstruī iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūntiātum summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 5. Ubī[1] īre mēcum māvīs?

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar hastens to the river.

377. EXERCISES

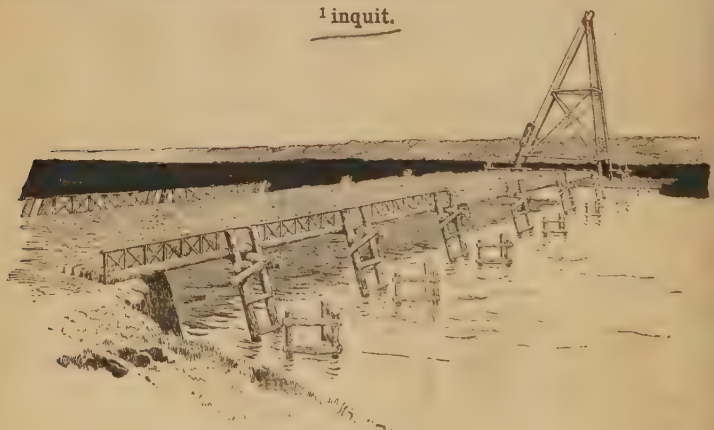
I. 1. Helvētiīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Caesar rogāvit cūr inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Prīncipēs ut dē dēditiōne conloquantur convenient. 4. Imperātor multōs diēs scīverat quae Gallī facere cōnātī essent. 5. Caesar praemittet eōs quī in flūmine pontem faciant. 6. Lēgātī Gallōrum Caesarī dīxērunt quae sibi in animō in reliquum tempus facere esset. 7. Germānī Caesarem rogāvērunt

[1] *When.*

"Cūr in nostrōs fīnēs prōcessistī?" 8. Germānī Caesarem rogāvērunt cūr in suōs fīnēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis multīs castellīs mūnītus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent. 10. In animō habēmus obsidēs inter nōs dare.

II. 1. We know who goes to the city. 2. The lieutenant said,[1] "Who goes to Rome?" 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.

[1] inquit.



Pōns in flumine

LESSON 63

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

378. A substantive clause is one that is used as a noun. Its use as subject or object of a verb is most common. In the following English examples the substantive clauses are italicized:

I know *what he has done*. (As object.)
I know (*that*) *he has come*. (As object.)
It happened *that he was present*. (As subject, or in apposition with subject.)
He persuaded us *to leave the city*. (As object.)
We feared *that he might die*. (As object.)
I do not doubt *that he will go*. (As object.)
He ordered us *to leave the city*. (As object.)

It will be observed from these examples that substantive clauses are expressed in English in several ways. In Latin substantive clauses are usually expressed either by the infinitive or by the subjunctive. This use of the infinitive in indirect discourse and as complementary infinitive, and of the subjunctive in indirect questions, we have already considered.

379. Subjunctive clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** are very often used in Latin as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree.* As an infinitive phrase is used in English as the object of such verbs, while **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive is used in Latin, this difference in usage must be carefully noted.

EXAMPLES

1. **Helvētiīs persuāsit ut exīrent,** *he persuaded the Helvetii to leave.*
2. **Suīs imperat nē id faciant,** *he orders his men not to do this.*
3. **Mīlitēs cohortātur ut impetum sustineant,** *he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack.*
4. **Tē rogō ut mihi crēdās,** *I ask you to believe me.*

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned:

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *persuade.*
imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *order, command.*
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *order, command.*
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask, beg.*
postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand, ask.*
moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, *advise, warn.*
petō, ere, petīvī (iī), petītus, *ask, request.*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire, ask.*
cohortor (and **hortor**), **ārī, ātus sum,** *encourage, urge.*
permittō, ere, permīsī, permissum, *permit, allow.*
concēdō, ere, concessī, concessum, *permit, allow.*

1. The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English:

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command.*
vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid.*

2. The following are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, allow.*
cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *determine.*
cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire.*
volō (also **nōlō** and **mālō**), **velle, voluī,** *wish.*

381. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Sciō quid tibi sit in animō. 2. Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocūtī domum rediērunt. 3. Eōs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent. 4. Helvētiī respondērunt sēsē exīre ē fīnibus nōn cōnātūrōs. 5. Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt?

II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night. 2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves. 3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields. 4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suīs imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permovērentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiīs superātīs, bellum gerere cum Germānīs cōnstituit. 4. Dumnorīx Sēquanīs persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētiī fīnitimōs cohortābantur ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātus iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūrātiōnem in reliquum tempus facerent. 8. Gallī nōn permittunt ut quisquam vīnō ūtātur. 9. Ubi Caesar in Gallōrum fīnēs pervēnit, suōs vāstāre agrōs vetuit. 10. Nostrī magnum Gallōrum fugientium numerum occīdērunt.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands[1] us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked him[2] what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now[3] that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

Dumnorix persuades the Sequani to allow the Helvetii to march through their Territory

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Cum[4] hīs ipsī Helvētiī persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem

[1] **imperō.** [2] Use the accusative. [3] *Now . . . conquered*, use abl. abs. [4] *since, when.*

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō[1] dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.[2] Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum** TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following:

1. **Timeō nē hoc faciat,** *I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear that he is doing this*).
2. **Timēbam ut hoc faceret,** *I feared that he would not do this.*

Observe

a. That the clauses **nē hoc faciat** and **ut hoc faceret** are the object of the main verb.

b. That we translate the **nē** clause affirmatively (*that*, etc.), and the **ut** clause negatively (*that not*, etc.).

385. RULE. — **Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.** — *The subjunctive with* **nē**, *that, or* **ut**, *that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

386. Examine the following:

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit,** *when Caesar came into Gaul.*
2. **Cum Caesar in Galliā esset,** *when Caesar was in Gaul.*
3. **Cum Caesarī id nūntiātum esset,** *when this had been reported to Caesar.*

[1] **eō dēprecātōre,** *by his mediation* (literally, *he (being) an intercessor*; ablative absolute). [2] Do not confuse this verb with **imperō.**

4. **Cum hīs persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mīsērunt,** *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*
5. **Cum prīmī ōrdinēs concidissent, reliquī tamen resistēbant,** *although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.*

Cum, meaning *when* (**cum** temporal, sentences 1, 2, 3), is used with the indicative if the verb of its clause refers to present or future time. **Cum**, meaning *when, after*, is commonly used with the subjunctive, if the verb of its clause refers to past time, but the indicative is sometimes used to point out clearly the exact time at which the main action took place (**cum** then = **quō tempore**). **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum** *causal*, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum** *concessive*, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. RULE. — ***Cum* clauses.** — 1. *In a* **cum** *clause expressing time, the verb is, if present or future, in the indicative; if the verb is past, it is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.*

2. *In a* **cum** *clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.*

388. VOCABULARY

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, *fear, respect.*
timeō, ēre, timuī, —, *fear, be afraid of.*
intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *learn, know, perceive.*
sīgna īnferō, *charge* (literally, *bear the standards against*).
in fidem venīre, *to put one's self under the protection.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

389. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suīs imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiīs nē iter per prōvinciam faciant mandat. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quaesīvērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse. 5. Helvētiī fīnitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsīs, sēcum exīrent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered[1] the Gauls to give up their arms.

390. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar timēbat ut nostrī impetum sustinērent. 2. Cum hoc fēcerīmus, tamen ā nostrīs amīcīs nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nostrōs in flūmine impedītōs lacesserent. 4. Cum nostrī fortiter resisterent, Gallī sē recipere cōnstituērunt. 5. Helvētiī superātī in Caesaris fidem venīre volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellegeret, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, et mīlitēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hōc factō, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Gallī pollicitī sunt sē sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs sīgna conversa īnferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although[2] the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

[1] Use iubeō. [2] *Although . . . resisted.* Express in two ways. See 311. 6, 315, 386. 5.

4. I fear that he is coming. 5. I know that he is coming. 6. I know who is coming. 7. The man that I saw in Rome has arrived. 8. Since the enemy have fled, we will return home.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review **possum** (274). The verb **sum** is often compounded with the prepositions **ab, ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, prō** (**prōd**), **super**. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound **prōsum**, *I benefit*, **prōd**, not **prō**, is found before **e**. Learn the conjugation of **prōsum** (498).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of **sum**:

absum, abesse, āfuī, —, *be away, be absent.*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, —, *be present, aid.*
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, —, *be lacking, fail.*
obsum, obesse, obfuī, —, *be against, injure.*
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, —, *be at the head of, command.*
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *be of use to, benefit.*

393. Examine the following:

1. **Lēgātus oppidō praefuit**, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town.*
2. **Amīcīs prōsumus**, *we benefit our friends.*
3. **Exercitus hostibus appropīnquābat** (**ad** + **propīnquō**), *the army was approaching the enemy.*
4. **Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he puts honor before money*, or *he prefers honor to money.*

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. RULE. — **Dative with Compound Verbs.** — *Many verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** *and* **super** *often govern the dative.*

395. VOCABULARY

appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātum (w. dat.), *approach, draw near.*

bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus, and dative, *make war upon.*

vīs (no gen. or dat. sing.), **vim, vī,** (476) f., plur., **vīrēs, ium, ibus,** *strength, power;* (plur.), *strength.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

396. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Verēmur ut impetum sustineant. 2. Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur. 3. Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intellēxit. 4. Quae[1] cum ita sint, in hostium fīnibus morābimur.

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance. 2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing. 3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide. 4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum fīnibus Gallōrum appropīnquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit. 2. Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod vīrēs deerant. 3. Germānī dīxērunt

[1] *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī quī suīs amīcīs obsunt nōn sunt fīdī. 5. Gallī mulierēs līberōsque ūnum in locum convocābant nē tēlīs interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum quī castrīs praeesset relīquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trāditīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātus ab hostium fīnibus nōn amplius[1] duōbus mīllibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnēs quī eā in pugnā fuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidī incolae paucī essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if[2] Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398. FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

SECOND PERSON IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		SECOND PERSON IMPERATIVE PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
amā, *love*	amāte	amāre, *be loved*	amāminī
monē, *advise*	monēte	monēre, *be advised*	monēminī
mitte, *send*	mittite	mittere, *be sent*	mittiminī
cape, *take*	capite	capere, *be taken*	capiminī
audī, *hear*	audīte	audīre, *be heard*	audīminī

[1] *more.* [2] *if . . . general:* see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative singular has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in* **-re** *and the second person plural of the present indicative passive.*

The present active imperatives of **dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** and **ferō** are **dīc, dūc, fac, fer.**

Give the imperative forms in the second person of **gerō, videō, dīcō, mūniō, capiō, sequor, laudō.**

399. The imperative, second person, is used to command or order; the subjunctive, in the *first and the third persons*, is used to exhort or urge. For example:

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
1ST PER.	**laudem,** *let me praise*	**nē laudem,** *let me not praise*
2D PER.	**laudā,** *praise*	**nōlī laudāre,** *do not praise*
3D PER.	**laudet,** *let him praise*	**nē laudet,** *let him not praise*
1ST PER.	**laudēmus** *let us praise*	**nē laudēmus,** *let us not praise*
2D PER.	**laudāte,** *praise*	**nōlīte laudāre,** *do not praise*
3D PER.	**laudent,** *let them praise*	**nē laudent,** *let them not praise*

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is **nē**, but that **nē** is *not* used with the imperative; instead **nōlī** or **nōlīte** (pres. imperative of **nōlō**, *be unwilling*) is used with the infinitive. Do not use **nē** or **nōn** with the imperative to express a negative command.

400. VOCABULARY

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *set over, put in charge of.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *carry back;* **referre pedem,** *retreat.*

ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*

longē, adv., *far, far off.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus,* chief of the Germans.

revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus,[1] dep., *turn back, return.*

animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus (animus + ad + vertō), *turn the mind to, notice.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite, facing, hostile;* **adversō colle,** *up the hill.*

401. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest. 2. Hostium ducēs cōnātī sunt castellum, cui praeerat lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dīxit nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex Caesaris lēgātīs, oppidō appropīnquāre contendit. 5. Cum proelī fīnem nox fēcisset, virī summā grātiā apud suōs ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of the Roman people is very great."

402. EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī respondērunt, "Nōlīte Rōmānīs bellum īnferre." 2. Dīc mihi quid in animō tibi sit. 3. Fortiter pugnēmus[2] nē in potestātem Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

[1] This verb in the perfect system, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, has only active forms. The perfect participle is deponent. [2] Notice that the subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence. See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūrātiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē revertī iussit. 5. Cum vīrēs tōtae deessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Sīgna īnferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbī captae Caesar praefēcit. 8. Cum nostrī ad multam noctem contendissent, nēmō ab hostibus occīsus est. 9. Ariovistus Caesarī "Cūr" inquit "in meōs fīnēs venīs?" 10. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē Caesar cōnstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labienus,[1] lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We noticed that our men had not seized the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Carefully distinguish the difference in English between a verbal noun and a verbal adjective. They both end in *-ing*, the verbal noun being used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples:

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of "is.")

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund is a verbal noun.* It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

[1] Review page 15, footnote, and page 27, footnote 1.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (491–495). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following:

NOM. **Vidēre est crēdere,** *seeing is believing* (infinitive as subject).

GEN. **Ars vīvendī** (gerund), *the art of living.*
Vēnit amīcōrum videndōrum causā (gerundive), *he came to see his friends* (*for the sake of seeing his friends*).

DAT.[1] **Vix hīs rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur** (gerundive), *time was hardly given for managing these things.*

ACC. **Vēnit ad pugnandum** (gerund), *he came to fight* (*for fighting*, or *for the purpose of fighting*).
Vēnit ad amīcōs videndōs (gerundive), *he came to see his friends* (*for the purpose of seeing his friends*).

ABL. **Mēns discendō alitur** (gerund), *the mind is strengthened by learning.*
Conlocūtī sunt dē cōnsiliīs faciendīs (gerundive), *they conferred about forming plans.*

Observe

1. That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

[1] The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common; **ad** and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive, not the gerund, is generally used when there is an object.
3. That purpose may be expressed by **ad** and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by **causā** following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407. VOCABULARY

coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus, *throw, hurl.*
dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, *select, choose.* [*opportunity.*
spatium, ī, n., *space, time,*
discō, ere, didicī, —, *learn.*
turris, is, f., *tower.*
causa, ae, f., *cause, reason;* abl., *for-the-sake-of, in-order-to* (after a genitive).
cupidus, a, um, *desirous* (*of*), *eager* (*for*) (with genitive).
dēnique, adv., *finally, at last.*
iam, adv., *now, already, soon.*

408. REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropīnquantibus, castrīs lēgātum praeficere. 3. Omnibus Gallīs superātīs, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim movērī et appropīnquāre moenibus vīdērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. 5. Dīc nōbīs quōs Rōmae vīderīs.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be conquered.

409. EXERCISES

I. 1. Agendō agere discimus. 2. Mīlitēs fīnem pugnandī fēcērunt. 3. Mīlitēs cupidī potiendī oppidī erant. 4. Bellum gerere hieme difficillimum est. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatium tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castrīs dēlēgit. 7. Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt. 8. Com-

plūrēs prīncipēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās annum satis esse Helvētiī arbitrābantur. 10. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs īnferendō cōnsilia capiēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discēdāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for[1] defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to[2] fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 228 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

timeō	prōcēdō	coniciō	imperō
appropīnquō	petō	dēligō	pāreō
intellegō	permittō	animadvertō	quaerō
polliceor	volō	revertor	cōnsequor
conloquor	nōlō	moror	audeō
vereor	mālō	obtineō	prōgredior
cōnor	respondeō	praeficiō	

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) **tollō** in the first person singular, and of (2) **cōnor** in the third person plural.

[1] *for defending:* genitive case. [2] *to fortify:* express in four ways.

FORM[1] FOR SYNOPSIS

Principal Parts

Tense	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Pres. { Act. / Pass.					
Imperf. { Act. / Pass.					
Fut. { Act. / Pass.					
Perf. { Act. / Pass.					
Plup. { Act. / Pass.					
Fut. Perf. { Act. / Pass.					

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

Caesar prepares to defeat the Plans of the Helvetii

412. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs

[1] This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolosātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, prōvinciae esse fīnitimōs. Ob eās rēs eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit, et ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant,[1] ex hībernīs ēdūcit et cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre in ulteriōrem Galliam contendit. Ibi nōnnūllae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs[2] pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē[2] septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

[1] Can you not infer its meaning from **hiems**? [2] Why ablative?

Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those teachers who wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by "if," "if not," "unless," and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example:

If it rains, I shall not go.
If he had not seen me, I should have gone.
You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using "if," "if not," "unless," by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example:

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows:

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.
2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415. SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following:

1. **Sī hoc faciunt, bene est,** *if they are doing this, it is well.*
2. **Sī hoc fēcērunt, bene fuit,** *if they did this, it was well.*

a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether "they did this" or not; it *merely makes a supposition.*

b. That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416. CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

1. **Sī hoc facerent, bene esset,** *if they were* (now) *doing this, it would be well.*
2. **Sī hoc fēcissent, bene fuisset,** *if they had done this, it would have been well.*

a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this. So too the conclusion (or apodosis) makes a statement contrary to the facts; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that it is not now well, the second sentence that it was not well.

b. That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417. EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary. But see Hints for Translation, 136.)

I. 1. Sī meus amīcus Rōmae est, laetus sum. 2. Sī Helvētiī ācrius Rōmānīs restitissent, nōn victī essent. 3. Sī adesset, exīre Rōmā parātī essēmus. 4. Laetus fuit pater, sī quis līberōs laudāvit. 5. Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem īnstrūxisset. 6. Plūrēs Gallī occīsī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōnsecūtī essent. 7. Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proelī committendī sīgnum?

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Rome, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418. VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

Sī hoc facient, bene erit, *if they do this* (i.e. *shall do this*), *it will be well.*

a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "shall").

b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states positively what will be the result, if the condition shall prove to be true.

c. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

d. That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they shall do this").

419. Less Vivid Future Conditions

Examine the following:

Sī hoc faciant, bene sit, *if they should do this, it would be well.*

a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should").

b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states less positively, as a mere possibility, what the result would be, should the condition prove to be true.

c. That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. Summary of Conditional Sentences

I. Present or Past Time.

1. Simple. Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
2. Contrary to Fact.
   a. Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
   b. Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

1. Vivid Future — Future[1] indicative in both parts.
2. Less Vivid Future — Present[1] subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been indicated in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of **sī** or **nisi**. For example:

[1] For the sake of clearness the use of other tenses in the protasis of future conditions is not here treated.

Prīncipēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur, *the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered* (literally, *having been conquered*), *will be sent to Rome.*

422. EXERCISES

I. 1. Sī equitēs cōnsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occīdent. 2. Sī equitēs cōnsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occīdant. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam terrēbimur. 4. Helvētiī flūmen Rhodanum trānsīssent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs līberātī domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trāditīs, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Sī hostēs flūmen trānseant, nostrī nōn cōnsequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have attacked them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the town has been well fortified?

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes:

I. Those that refer to the future. For example:

May my friend come!
Would that my friend would come!
O that my friend would come!

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example:

O that my friend were here!
I wish (that) my friend were here!
Would that my friend were here!
} referring to present time, and implying that he is not here

O that my friend had been here!
I wish (that) my friend had been here!
Would that my friend had been here!
} referring to past time, and implying that he was not here.

424. Examine the following:

1. (**Utinam**) **meus amīcus veniat**, *may my friend come!* (a wish about the future).
2. **Utinam meus amīcus adesset**, *would that my friend were here!* (a wish hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
3. **Utinam meus amīcus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here!* (a wish hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).

a. Observe that the subjunctive is used to express a wish.

b. That the present (or perfect) subjunctive expresses a wish relating to the future, that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect a wish hopeless in past time.

c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary to fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. RULE. — **Subjunctive in Wishes.** — *Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without* **utinam**; *wishes hopeless in present time by* **utinam** *with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by* **utinam** *with the pluperfect subjunctive.*

426. EXERCISES

I. 1. Utinam nē Gallī coniūrātiōnem fēcissent! 2. Mīles ē proeliō nē discēdat! 3. Utinam hoc facerent! 4. Helvētiī "Utinam" inquiunt[1] "nē altissimīs montibus continērēmur!" 5. Utinam nē Germānī populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent! 6. Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!

II. 1. May he always obey the general! 2. I wish we had gone to Athens! 3. Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul! 4. O that he had not persuaded me! 5. May we be killed, if we surrender our arms! 6. Would that we were able to go with you!

LESSON 74

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb, if the main clause makes a statement (affirmative or negative),[2] follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., *in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses* (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

[1] Plural of **inquit.** [2] The treatment of main clauses involving command has been purposely excluded from this book.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer commonly to the subject of the introductory verb, but sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following:

Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
	Present Time
Vir quem videō meus amīcus est, *the man whom I see is my friend.*	**Dīcit virum quem videat suum amīcum esse**, *he says that the man whom he sees is his friend.*
	Past Time
	Dīxit virum quem vidēret suum amīcum esse, *he said that the man whom he saw was his friend.*

Observe

a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.

b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **videō** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dīcit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dīxit**, is a secondary tense.

c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. Rule. — **Moods in Indirect Discourse.** — *In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431. EXERCISES

I. 1. Mīlitēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt. 2. Dīxit mīlitēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse. 3. Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, Caesar castra mūniēbat. 4. Dīxērunt Caesarem, ubi ad suum exercitum pervēnissent, castra mūnīvisse. 5. Caesar dīxit suōs flūmen, quod[1] altissimum esset, trānsīre nōn posse. 6. Ariovistus Caesarī "Volō" inquit "hīs dē rēbus, quae inter nōs agī[2] coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere[2] tēcum." 7. Ariovistus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē eīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.

II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after **audiō**. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after **dīxit**. 7. Ariovistus replied that those who have conquered ought to rule[3] those whom they have conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Ācriter pugnātum est, *the battle was fought sharply*, or *there was sharp fighting* (literally, *it was sharply fought*).

[1] *because.* [2] **agō**, *treat.* [3] **imperō**.

Vōs hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (more literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vōbīs hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in **-um** and **-ū**. These forms are used only in the following constructions:

Lēgātī vēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar.*

Hoc difficile est factū, *this is difficult to do.*

The supine in **-um** is used to express purpose, but only after verbs of motion; the supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns, as ablative of specification.

434. Various Ways of Expressing Purpose

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English?

Examples

Helvētiī lēgātōs mīsērunt	**ut pācem peterent,** **quī pācem peterent,** **pācis petendae causā,** **ad pācem petendam,** **pācem petītum,**	*the Helvetii sent ambassadors to seek peace.*
Mīlitēs mittuntur	**ad pugnandum,** **pugnandī causā,**	*the soldiers are sent to fight.*

435. Rule. — **Supine in *-um*.** — *The supine in* **-um** *is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.*

436. Exercises

I. 1. Hoc est mīrābile dictū. 2. Ariovistus respondit, "Tē ad mē venīre oportet." 3. Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad

Caesarem vēnērunt auxilium petītum. 4. Sī volunt, eīs ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem[1] flūmen Arar fluat oculīs iūdicārī nōn potest. 6. Helvētiī rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Gallī coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere nūntius dīcit.

II. 1. He went to Rome to[2] see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and the verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example:

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise*, or *is going to praise*, or *intends to praise*.

For all forms of this conjugation, see 504.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example:

Sciō quem vīsūrus sit, *I know whom he is going to see*, or *whom he will see*.

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

[1] *direction.* [2] *to see his daughters:* express in three ways.

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation or necessity*. For example:

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised*, or *he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 505.

439. Uses of the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," **id mihi agendum est**.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," **nōbīs veniendum est**.

Examples

Urbs est mūnienda, *the city must be fortified.*

Nōbīs fortiter pugnandum est, *we ought to* (or *must*) *fight bravely* (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vīsūrī erāmus; amātūra fuit; monitūrae erant. 2. Nōbīs cum Gallīs bellum gerendum est. 3. Incolae oppidī ēruptiōnem erant factūrī. 4. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant; aciēs īnstruenda, sīgnum dandum, mīlitēs ab opere revocandī erant. 5. Sī victūrī sumus, nōbīs fortissimē contendendum erit. 6. Sciēbam quid vōs factūrī

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolīs quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

NOTE

The following exercises are intended to provide additional material for the rapid reading of connected prose. Each selection is based on the vocabulary and constructions already acquired. Nothing has been admitted that has not been previously studied, with the exception of a very few necessary words, all of which are indicated by superior figures and translated in footnotes. Such words, however, present no additional difficulty in form or construction. Proper names which have no English form, or are readily recognizable, are used without explanation; *e.g.* *Coriolanus*, *Washingtonius*.

The exercises have been prepared for use after every third lesson. The subject matter chosen is intentionally largely non-classical, in order that the beginner may realize as early as possible that the Latin language is adapted to the expression of modern as well as ancient thought.

SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING

(To follow Lesson 3)

1. A Dialogue

Ubi est tua patria? America mea patria est; estne tua? Nōn est; mea patria Gallia est. Est terra Eurōpae. Pulchrane Gallia est? Pulchra et lāta terra est ubi longae viae sunt. Suntne silvae tuae patriae magnae? Magnae nōn sunt, parvae sunt. Nōnne vīta fēminārum tuae patriae pulchra est? Fēminārum bonārum vīta semper pulchra et bona est.

(To follow Lesson 6)

2. A Faithful Servant

Mārcus est fīdus servus agricolae bonī in īnsulā. Frūmentum et vīnum dominī in oppidum portat, ubi cibus incolīs superbīs grātus est. Malus nauta et amīcus in hortō sunt. Nauta servum vocat. "Cūr vīnum, serve, in hortum nōn portās?" Mārcus amīcīs vīnum in pōculō[1] parvō dat. Nauta vīnum bonum laudat sed pōculum parvum et inopiam vīnī culpat. Pugnant. Mārcus nautam et amīcum superat.[2] Servō pecūniam dant, et fīdus Mārcus vīnum et frūmentum servat.

(To follow Lesson 9)

3. Roman Children

Eurōpae terra Ītalia est. Rōma magnum in Ītaliā oppidum est. Multae portae, bonae et lātae viae, alba aedificia in oppidō sunt. Hortī incolārum superbōrum magnī sunt.

[1] *cup.* [2] *overcome.*

In hortō Mārcī lūdus[1] est. Magister, vir perītus, līberōs convocat. Equī validī parvōs līberōs in aedificium magistrī portant. Cūr malī puerī pugnant? Asperī sunt. Puerī amant bella et proelia et sagittās et gladiōs. Puellās tenerās rosae albae in hortō, nova lūna et parvae stellae dēlectant. Magister malōs et pigrōs discipulōs culpat, sed bonōs (discipulōs) amat. Pulchrōs librōs dōna bonīs puerīs et puellīs dat. Multae fābulae in librīs Rōmam oppidum laudant.

(To follow Lesson 12)

4. A Rough Wooing

Rōma parvum oppidum erat, ubi Rōmulus dominus erat. Incolae virī erant, sed fēminae in oppidō nōn erant. Rōmulī lēgātī multōs agricolās et multās fēminās et pulchrās puellās in oppidum convocāvērunt. Armīs idōneīs, pīlīs, gladiīs, hastīs, incolae pugnābant. Fēminās asperum proelium dēlectābat. Sed Rōmulī cōnsilium malum erat. Virī validī puellās tenerās in aedificia portāvērunt. Superbī agricolae armīs Rōmānōs oppugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus et Rōmulī amīcī agricolās superābant. Tum[2] miserae agricolārum fīliae parvōs līberōs in proelium portāvērunt et virōs vocāvērunt: "Semper virōs[3] et līberōs amābimus. Cūr pugnātis? Nōnne fīliās et fīliārum līberōs amātis?"

(To follow Lesson 15)

5. How Tiberius won a Wife

Mārcus, dux Rōmānārum cōpiārum, mīles perītus erat. In Galliā cum Helvētiīs Rōmānī pugnābant et Mārcus locum hībernīs idōneum parāverat. Helvētiī castra Rō-

[1] *school.* [2] *then.* [3] *husbands.*

mānōrum oppugnāre mātūrāvērunt et in silvīs et agrīs semper dīmicābant. Rōmānōrum perīculum magnum erat. Multī in castrīs equitēs erant, multae et tenerae fēminae, multī et parvī līberī, sed nōn erat cibī cōpia.

Tiberium, fīdum lēgātum, Mārcus dux vocat. "Nōnne perīculum vidēs? Cōpiae Helvētiōrum magnae sunt et castra expugnābunt. Tulliam pulchram, fīliam meam, amās. Nōnne caput ferī Helvētiōrum ducis in castra portābis? Tuum Tullia praemium erit."

Mox Tiberium cum paucīs mīlitibus albī equī ad castra Helvētiōrum portābant. Longa et aspera via erat, sed validī equī et virī sunt. Helvētiī magnam praedam, vīnum, frūmentum, in castra portāverant. Superāverat vīnum ducem Helvētiōrum. Magnum in vīnō perīculum est. Tiberius gladiō ducem oppugnat, mox ducis caput ad Mārcum portat. Mārcus Tiberium laudat et lēgātō fīdō Tulliam, fīliam pulchram, dat. Sed Tiberiī virtūs mīlitum Rōmānōrum virtūtem auget. Helvētiōs in fugam dant, magnam frūmentī cōpiam, magnam praedam in castra Rōmāna portant.

(To follow Lesson 18)

6. The Defense of the Bridge

Porsena, rēx Clūsiī,[1] hostis Rōmānōrum erat. Multīs cōpiīs Rōmam urbem oppugnābat et mīlitēs Rōmānōs in fugam dederat. Longus pōns in Tiberī flūmine lātō et altō erat. Valerius pontem occupāre mātūrat, ubi cum ferīs hostibus dīmicābit. Magnā virtūte Rōmānī in ponte pugnābant, sed proeliō hostēs cōnsulem superāvērunt. Cōnsul pontem dēlēre[2] parābat. Tum vir validus, Horātius Coclēs, trāns flūmen cum hostibus dīmicāvit. Magnum perīculum erat, magna caedēs. Multīs corporis vulneribus

[1] *Clusium*, a town of Etruria. [2] *destroy*.

Horātius labōrābat, sed pedem nōn mōvit et multā nocte hostēs in fugam dedit. Laetī Rōmānī Horātiō lātōs agrōs dedērunt.

(To follow Lesson 21)

7. A Stern Father

Brūtus et Valerius cōnsulēs Rōmānī erant et cum Tarquiniō[1] rēge pugnābant. Sed malī fīliī Brūtī contrā patrem ā Tarquiniō incitābantur. Cum paucīs coniūrātīs Rōmae imperium Tarquiniō dominō dare parābant. Sed per Brūtī servum fīdum, quod perīculō terrēbātur, cōnsulī nōmina coniūrātōrum nūntiābantur.[2] Ā cōnsule fīliī cum coniūrātīs in collem Capitōlīnum[3] magnā cum celeritāte convocantur. Ex sedīlī hominēs superbōs culpat quod contrā urbem armantur. Pater miser fīliōrum vītam nōn servāvit. Tum mīlitēs hominēs malōs gladiīs necāvērunt. Sed Brūtī, patris fortissimī,[4] magna virtus ā Rōmānīs grātīs semper laudābitur.

(To follow Lesson 24)

8. The Romans and the Elephants

Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī[5] rēgem, quod fortis vir bonusque imperātor erat, Tarentī[6] cīvēs in Ītaliam vocāvērunt. Cum Rōmānīs multīs proeliīs dīmicāvit Rōmānōsque superāvit, quod elephantōs[7] in Ītaliam portāverat, quae animālia ad Pyrrhī tempus ā Rōmānīs nōn vidēbantur. Sed audācēs Rōmānī pedēs elephantōrum pīlīs vulnerābant magnaque animālium caedēs fuit. Parī virtūte mīlitēs cum Pyrrhī cōpiīs dīmicāvērunt. Omnia corpora necātōrum Rōmānōrum vulnera in capitibus habēbant.

[1] *Tarquin.* [2] *report.* [3] *Capitoline.* [4] *very brave.*

[5] *Epirus*, a country northwest of Greece.

[6] *Tarentum*, a Greek city on the southern coast of Italy; now Taranto.

[7] *elephants.*

(To follow Lesson 27)

9. Charlemagne and his School

Carolus[1] Magnus, Francōrum[2] rēx, imperātorque[3] Rōmānus, multōs in patriā lūdōs conlocāvit, ubi fīliī et potentium et reliquōrum litterās[4] discēbant.[5] Saepe in lūdō rēx magnus erat, pigrōs discipulōs culpābat, ācrēs laudābat. Sed potentium līberī discere nōn cupiēbant, quod Carolī temporibus ā potentibus bella semper gerēbantur. Pigrōs līberōs rēx in aedificium vocāvit dīxitque: "Quod prīmōrum fīliī estis, fīdī discipulī nōnne eritis? Omnēs meī cīvēs in lūdō parēs sunt et ad parem cūram ā magistrīs incitābuntur. Patriae nostrae laudem[6] augēre cupiō,[7] quod fortēs meī Germānī sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs librīs et litterīs superantur. Magnā cum celeritāte magnōque cum studiō discētis, quod pigrī discipulī nōn servābunt dōna mea meamque amīcitiam.

(To follow Lesson 30)

10. Brennus, the Gallic General, in Rome

Rōmānī veteribus temporibus cum Gallīs, Ītaliae partis incolīs, bellum gerēbant. Dux Gallōrum Brennus erat et Ītaliam vāstābat. Ad Alliam flūmen Rōmānī cum Gallīs contendērunt, sed hostēs superāvērunt. Tum ad urbem Rōmam contendēbant. In urbe neque in portīs neque in viīs hominēs vidēbant, sed aedificia alta et pulchra laudābant. In Forō[8] sedīlia vidēbant, ubi prīncipēs Rōmānīs sedēbant.[9] Gladiīs suīs Gallī prīncipēs necāvērunt. Rōmānī lēgātōs ad Brennum mīsērunt et pecūniae cōpiam prō lībertāte Gallīs dedērunt. Sed superbus Gallōrum dux

[1] *Charles.* [2] *Franks.* [3] here *emperor.* [4] *letters.*
[5] *studied.* [6] *praise, reputation.* [7] *wish, desire.*
[8] *market place, Forum.* [9] *sat.*

gladium in lībrā[1] conlocāvit et "Vae[2] victīs!" exclāmāvit.[3] Tum Camillus, fortis Rōmānōrum dux, legiōnēs in Forum dūxit et patriam ab hostibus servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 33)

11. Sir Philip Sidney

Proeliō asperō mīlitēs contendēbant, multa corpora et vulnerātōrum et interfectōrum hominum in terrā vidēbantur. In quibus erat vir ē prīncipibus quī ab omnibus virtūte amābātur. Sed vulnerātus multum et vulnere et sitī[4] labōrābat. Cui amīcī auxilium dare mātūrāvērunt. Mīles illī aquam[5] in pōculō portābat dīxitque: "Domine[6] Philippe, hanc aquam quam ex flūmine portāvī habēbis. Grāta miserō hominī aqua erit." Sed Philippus mox mīlitem vulnerātum vīdit quī illam aquam habēre cupiēbat. "Huic mīlitī hanc aquam dabis," dīxit. Nōnne hoc pulchrum factum erat, quod omnēs semper laudābimus?

(To follow Lesson 36)

12. William Tell

Helvētia[7] hodiē lībera cīvitās est, sed nōn semper erat. Temporibus veteribus superbus homō, quī Gesslerus appellābātur, Helvētiae imperium habēbat. Is līgnum[8] in viā cōnstituit, in quō pīleum[9] posuit, omnēsque quī illā viā iter faciēbant pīleī auctōritātem cōgnōscere iussit. Sed sōlus ex incolīs Guglielmus[10] Tellius illud nōn fēcit. Audīvit Gesslerus et territus est. "Quis nōn movēbitur?" dixit. "Aliī idem facient. Tōta Helvētia nostrō imperiō līberābitur."

Ab omnibus Tellius, quod sagittārum perītus erat, laudā-

[1] *balance, pair of scales.* [2] *woe.* [3] *cried out.* [4] *thirst.* [5] *water.*
[6] *Sir.* [7] *Switzerland.* [8] *pole.* [9] *cap.* [10] *William.*

bātur. Quā dē causā Gesslerus malum cōnsilium cēpit. Parvum Tellii puerum in viā cum mālō[1] in capite conlocārī iussit. In illud Tellius sagittam mittere iussus est. Pater territus id quod Gesslerus iusserat facere parātus nōn erat. Sed malus ille homō eī dīxit: "Nōnne hoc faciēs? Fīliumne tuum interficiam?" Itaque Tellius sagittam mīsit, quae ad mālum vēnit. Clāmōre magnō omnēs quī vīderant Tellii factum laudāvērunt. Sed Gesslerus "Cūr alteram cēpistī sagittam?" dīxit. "Haec sagitta," Tellius dīxit, "in[2] tuam mortem servāta est, quod post puerī meī mortem nūllīs moenibus dēfēnsus eris." Audīvit Gesslerus et magnā celeritāte Tellium in vinculīs nāve ēripuit. Sed liberātus mox Tellius superbum hominem alterā illā sagittā necāvit Helvētiōsque līberāvit.

(To follow Lesson 39)

13. Arnold Winkelried

Helvētia Tellii virtūte lībera facta erat. Sed incolae, propter pecūniae parvam cōpiam, multōs mīlitēs nōn habēbant quī patriam dēfendēbant. Quā dē causā prīncipēs et equitēs, Helvētiae fīnitimī, terram occupāre incolāsque prō servīs habēre cupiēbant. Magnus mīlitum exercitus in Helvētiam missus est. Hīs mīlitibus longae hastae, magnī gladiī, incolīs sagittae, saxa, līgna arma erant. Sed omnibus dē montibus Helvētii convēnērunt et in hostēs asperōs impetum fēcērunt. Diū pugnātum est, sed hastīs longīs agricolae ab exercitū prohibēbantur, neque sagittae quās in mīlitēs mittēbant eōs vulnerābant. Et ā dextrō et ā sinistrō cornū agricolae hostēs oppugnābant, sed nūllum mīlitem interfēcērunt. Tum ūnus ex illīs, cui Arnoldus Winkelriedius nōmen erat, in viam exīvit dīxitque:

[1] *apple.* [2] *for.*

"Trāns illum montem mihi domus cum līberīs et uxōre[1] est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vītā patriae meae cīvibusque meīs prō lībertāte dabō. Viam lībertātī faciam." Tum, nūllīs cum armīs, sed manibus sōlīs, hastās hostium multās cēpit et corpus suum contrā eās mīsit. Amīcī fortissimī trāns corpus virī audācis, quod humī erat, impetum magnā cum virtūte fecērunt. Hostēs hōc ācrī animō territī et in fugam datī sunt. Sed Helvētiī per omne futūrum tempus līberī remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedii virtūte, quam omnēs semper laudābunt, servātī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 42)

14. The First Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Ītaliae prōvinciā, trium mīllium pedum altitūdine est. Ex eō et ignis et flūmen saxōrum, quod ā nōbīs "lava" appellātur, saepe in agrōs mittitur. Sed temporibus veterum Rōmānōrum pulcher mōns erat, sub quō multī et agricolae et mercātōrēs vīcos et oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentī, vīnī multum in agrīs et in collibus erat, multae in portubus nāvēs. Saepe prīncipēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in hīs oppidīs manēbant et hiemem fugiēbant. Sed haec omnia LXXIX post Christum annīs, mēnse Augustō, cāsū miserō dēlēta sunt. Eō annō Plīnius,[2] Rōmānārum nāvium longārum dux, cum Plīniō alterō, nepōte[3] suō, Mīsēnī,[4] quī portus Rōmānus est, erat. Eī ēruptiō Vesuviī facta esse nūntiātur. Et ipse vīdit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter fūmum.[5] Itaque nāve ad Vesuvium Plīnius vēnit incolīsque miserīs auxilium parābat. Undique clāmōrem miserum audiēbat hominum quī aliī aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et ipse discēdere coāctus est. Sed saxīs illīs, dē quibus dīximus, in itinere interfectus est.

[1] *wife.* [2] *Pliny.* [3] *grandson.* [4] locative, *at Misenum.* [5] *smoke.*

Omnēs agrī, omnēs vīcī, oppida omnia ēruptiōne incēnsa sunt. Post paucōs diēs nihil in terrā reliquī erat. Saxa omnēs agrōs complēverant. Neque oppida illa tria sub monte conlocāta, Stabiae, Herculāneum, Pompēiī, per multōs annōs ab ūllō vīsa sunt. Hodiē autem eī quī in Ītaliam iter faciunt omnēs in Campāniam veniunt. Nam videntur in hīs locīs quae ex illīs oppidīs remanent, — portae, viae cum aedificiīs suīs, templa deōrum. Multae et pulchrae rēs, quae in incolārum domibus fuērunt, servātae sunt multaque dē veterum hominum vītā et fortūnā cōgnōscet quī illās rēs vīderit.

(To follow Lesson 45)

15. The Treacherous Schoolmaster

Falerii,[1] Etrūriae oppidum, ā Rōmānīs diū obsidēbantur. Sed fortissimī incolae magnā virtūte patriam tūtam ab hostibus servābant. Quōdam diē senex plūrimīs cum puerīs ex oppidī portā ad castra Rōmāna exībat. Cuius adventum inter castra et oppidum nōbilissimus Rōmānōrum dux, Camillus nōmine, exspectābat. Ille autem ad imperātōrem accessit dīxitque: "Lūdī magister in oppidō Faleriis[1] sum. Carissimōs potentium cīvium fīliōs tuae potestātī permittō. Brevī tempore superbī incolae, quī līberōs suōs amant, et ipsī in castra tua pervenient et prō līberōrum lībertāte Rōmānīs cīvitātem suam dabunt." Turpī magistrī cōnsiliō lēnis Camillī animus permōtus est. Puerōs convocāvit eīsque flagella[2] in malum magistrum dedit et eōs patrēs suōs dē illīus malō animō certiōrēs facere iussit. Grātior Falīscīs[3] Camillī magnitūdō

[1] plural in form, singular in meaning.

[2] *twigs, whips.*

[3] *Falisci*, the inhabitants of Falerii.

animī quam victōria erat. Itaque pācem cum Rōmānīs cōnfīrmāvērunt Rōmānaeque reī pūblicae clientēs factī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 48)

16. Stories of Caesar

Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor, dē quō omnēs vōs multa iam audīvistis plūraque audiētis, iuvenis iter per Hispāniam prōvinciam faciēbat. Nocte ad vīcum pervēnit, ubi ā prīncipe bene receptus est. Superbior ille ūllō cīve Rōmānō erat, quod in suō vīcō plūrimum poterat. Propter quod Caesaris amīcī eum culpābant. Sed Caesar, prūdentissimus vir, dīxit: "Superbus prīnceps nōn est. Prīnceps vīcī maior est omnibus quī post prīmum Rōmae cīvem sunt."

Īdem Caesar cum Pompēiō, duce summō, et cum suīs cīvibus bellum gessit. Eō tempore in Galliam prōvinciam prō cōnsule missus erat. Fīnis autem prōvinciae et Ītaliae flūmen minimē[1] lātum erat, quod Rubicō[2] appellātur. Cuius flūminis in rīpā aciem suam Caesar īnstrūxit diūque exspectābat lēgātōrum, quī dē pāce missī erant, adventum. Posteā autem, Rubicōnem ubi exercitū trānsiit, "Ālea[3] iacta est!" exclāmāvit. Ex eō tempore plūrimi quī ācriter sed nōn prūdentissimē faciunt āleam iēcisse dīcuntur.

In illō ipsō bellō Pompēius, cuius mīlitēs minōrēs numerō Caesaris mīlitibus erant, Brundisiō, quod nōmen est portūs Ītaliae, in Graeciam trānsiit. Et Caesar mare trānsīre cupiēbat. Sed ventus[4] asperrimus nāvem in aliam partem ēgit. Nautae territī ad terram sē recipere cupiēbant. Quibus Caesar, fortissimus vir, dīxit: "Fortiter faciētis et tūtī eritis, quod Caesarem Caesarisque fortūnās portātis."

[1] adverb of **minimus**. [2] *Rubicon*. [3] *die*. [4] *wind*.

(To follow Lesson 51)

17. Coriolanus and his Mother

Prīmīs reī pūblicae līberae temporibus Rōmae iuvenis quīdam erat, cui Gnaeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat, maiōre virtūte quam prūdentī cōnsiliō. Hunc, quod superbissimus erat, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exīre iussit. Ille autem ad Volscōs exīvit, quōs dē vetere suā līberātate monuit. Itaque illī cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere mātūrābant, cuius bellī imperium Coriolānō dedērunt. Maximā mīlitum multitūdine ad urbem accessērunt eamque angustō vāllō obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commīsērunt, neque tamen hostēs superāre potuērunt. Sed fēminae Rōmānae ad Veturiam, Coriolānī mātrem, eiusque uxōrem Volumniam convēnērunt. Quae cum Mārciī duōbus fīliīs parvīs in hostium castra ierunt, urbem, quam virī dēfendere nōn poterant, lacrimīs[1] suīs dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō fēminārum agmen accēdere nūntiātur, prīmō superbissimē eās recēpit. Ubi autem ex sedīlī suō mātrem vīdit, maximē permōtus ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia dīxit: "Hostisne fīlius ad mē venit captaque ā mīlitibus māter tua in tuīs castrīs sum? Grāta mihi vīta esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē patriae tuae hostem, cīvibus nōn amīcum reperiō. Nōnne mē, mātrem tuam, uxōrem, fīliōs amābis et cum exercitū tuō in Volscōs redībis, urbī Rōmānae lībertātem reddēs? Nihil turpius, nihil miserius ego tōtā vītā vīdī nec vidēre poterō."

Hīs mātris verbīs[2] permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra mōvit cīvitātemque līberam servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus ā Volscīs posteā interfectus est. Fēminīs fortissimīs summam laudem Rōmānī dedērunt templumque Fortūnae prō eārum subsidiō in urbe conlocāvērunt.

[1] *tears.* [2] *words.*

(To follow Lesson 54)

18. The Faithful Wives of Weinsberg

Imperātor quīdam Germānus oppidum mūnītissimum, quod Weinsberg appellātur, quod cīvēs līberī esse cupiēbant, obsidēbat. Cottīdiānis proeliīs oppidī incolae cum mīlitibus imperātōris pugnantēs nec vincere poterant nec vincī. At[1] post longum tempus reī frūmentāriae inopiā oppidum labōrābat, quod commeātū omnī prohibēbātur. Quā dē causā litterās ad imperātōrem scrīpsērunt, quibus oppidum in eius potestātem dēdidērunt. Ille autem haec dē pāce cōnstituit. Mulierēs omnēs exīre iussit. "Portābitis ex oppidō," inquit, "vōbīscum quae tollere poteritis. Sed virōs omnēs occīdī iubēbō." Diē proximō, sīgnō datō, exeunt ē portā mulierēs, quārum quaeque virum suum portābat. Tum miserae fēminae sē ad imperātōris pedēs iaciunt. At[1] ille permōtus virīs vītam dōnāvit[2] oppidumque tūtum ā mīlitibus asperīs servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 57)

19. Tales of the War of Independence

Colōnī[3] Americānī, quī rēgem Britannōrum sibi nocēre imperiīs suīs crēdēbant, litterās ad rēgem mittere cōnstituērunt, quibus summās Britannōrum iniūriās[4] dēmōnstrābant. Quās litterās cōnficere ūnus ex nōbiliōribus, Samuel Adams nōmine, ab iīs iussus est. Fīlia autem Samuēlis parva litterīs vīsīs patrī "Spērō," inquit, "brevī tempore litterās rēgis in manibus futūrās esse." Cui pater respondit: "Ego, mea fīlia, exīstimō rēgem superbissimum pedēs suōs in nostrīs litterīs positūrum esse."

Mīlitum Britannōrum dux, Gagius[5] nōmine, colōnīs frūmentum cōnferrī audīverat, quō sē potītūrum esse spērābat.

[1] *but.* [2] *gave.* [3] *colonists.* [4] *wrongs.* [5] *Gage.*

Erant autem Bostōniī[1] virī patriae amantissimī, quī igne plēbī dēmōnstrātūrī erant Britannum ducem profectum esse. Itaque nocte hī ignēs ā cīvibus vīsī sunt. Inter quōs Paulus Revērius, perītissimus eques, nihil morātus, equum cōnscendit[2] et maximā celeritāte per vīcōs iter fēcit Britannōs iam ventūrōs esse vocāns. Sīc tandem[3] ad oppidum Lexingtōnium pervēnit, ubi et Samuel Adams et Ioannes[4] Hancock in amīcōrum domibus erant. Hōs captōs sēcum redūcere Gagius quam maximē cupiēbat. Sed ā Revēriō monitī mīlitēs Britannōs fūgērunt.

Fortissimī erant mīlitēs Americānī, sed ducibus male pārēbant. Centuriō[5] quīdam ūnum ex suīs mīlitibus aquam in castra portāre iussisse dīcitur. Cui ille superbē respondit: "Ego nōn portābō, quod complūra iam pōcula portāvī. Quā rē tū tibi ipse hodiē illam comparābis." Nec meliōre ipsī centuriōnēs animō erant. Washingtōnius arborem[6] maximam mīlitēs quōsdam magnō labōre moventēs vīdit. Sed eī centuriōnem eīs auxilium ferre iubentī ille "Num mē centuriōnem," inquit, "esse tū scīs?"

(To follow Lesson 60)

20. More Tales of the War of Independence

Multī inter Americānōs Washingtōniō, maximō ducī, tam inimīcī erant ut imperium ēripere cōnārentur. Quae omnia fortissimō animō ille tulit. Cīvis quīdam aliquem in silvā sē moventem audīvisse dīcitur. Summā cum dīligentiā accessit ut causam cōgnōsceret. Quid autem eum vīdisse arbitrāminī? Washingtōnius humī Deum multīs cum lacrimīs rogābat: "Patriam meam tuō auxiliō servābis." Cōnspectū permōtus, cīvis rediit neque ab illō vīsus est. Post multōs annōs, rē nūntiātā, crēdidisse sē dīxit virum tam bonum Deō persuādēre dēbuisse.

[1] locative, *at Boston.* [2] *mounted.* [3] *at length.* [4] *John.* [5] *captain.* [6] *tree.*

Philadelphiae[1] exercitus Britannōrum in hībernīs erat. Illō tempore Howius,[2] exercitūs dux, ut cōpiās Washingtōniī, quae praesidiō fīnitimīs castrīs erant, pelleret cōnsilium cēpit. Semper autem eius cōnsiliīs ducī Americānō nūntiātīs nē ea perficeret impedītus est. Itaque multā nocte lēgātī et dux domum mulieris cuiusdam, Lȳdiae Darrah nōmine, convēnērunt. Nē cōnsilia audīrentur eam cum omnibus suīs in domūs superiōrem partem īre coēgit. Ipse in parte īnferiōre lēgātōs imperiīs suīs summā cum dīligentiā pārēre iussit. Lȳdia autem, ut omnia quae dīcēbantur audīret, ad portam accesserat. Ubi lēgātī domum relīquērunt, eam nihil cōnsiliōrum scīre crēdentes, virō sē ad vīcum quendam profectūram esse dīxit ut rem frūmentāriam suīs comparāret. In quem vīcum ubi vēnit, centuriōnī Americānō ea quae audīverat nūntiāvit ita ut Washingtōnius dē perīculō monitus exercituī Britannōrum fortiter resistere posset. Neque quisquam Lȳdiae fortiter factum ante bellī fīnem audīvit.

Proeliō quōdam ad Cowpens vīcum factō Tarletōnius, lēgātus Britannōrum, quī dux exercitūs erat, ā Guglielmō Washingtōniō, lēgātō Americānō, vulnerātus est. Posteā mulierī cuidam Washingtōnium tam ferum esse dīxit ut nōmen suum scrībere nōn scīret. Cui illa vulnus dēmōnstrāns "At optimē," inquit, "suum sīgnum facere scit." Illīs autem temporibus eī quī scrībere nōn sciēbant sīgnum prō nōmine in litterīs faciēbant.

(To follow Lesson 63)

21. The Burnt Hand

Porsena, Etruscōrum rēx, magnō cum exercitū Rōmam urbem obsidēbat. Magnus Rōmānōrum timor erat, quod

[1] locative. [2] *Howe.*

frūmentī nōn multum in urbe erat. Patriam tamen hostibus trādere nōlēbant. Quā dē causā iuvenēs quīdam bellum cōnficere cōnstituērunt ūnumque ex suō numerō quī rēgem gladiō necāret mīsērunt. Agricolam sē esse simulāns[1] Mūcius in Etruscōrum castra profectus rēgem petīvit. Rogāre autem quis rēx esset nōluit, nē hostēs Rōmānum sē esse cōgnōscerent, sed nōbilem quendam pulcherrimē armātum prō rēge interfēcit. Captus et ad rēgem ductus est. Rogātus quis esset aut cūr ūnum ē rēgis lēgātīs interfēcisset, "Rōmānus sum," inquit, "quī patriae meae hostem necāre voluī." Quae ubi rēx audīvit, ut ignī cremārētur imperāvit. Sed nōn territus prōcessit Rōmānus et dextrā manū in ignī positā, "Ignem tuum," inquit, "minimē vereor. Plūrimī mihi sunt sociī, quī tē interficient, nisi in Etrūriam redībis." Quibus verbīs superbissimīs audītīs Porsena iuvenī lībertātem dōnāvit, magnō cīvis Rōmānī animō maximē permōtus. Rōmam ille rediit, et posteā ā plēbe Scaevola vocābātur, quod est, is quī manum sōlam sinistram habet.

(To follow Lesson 66)

22. Follow the Flag

Cum ē Galliā Caesar in Britanniam dē tertiā vigiliā profectus esset, proximō diē in cōnspectum terrae Britannicae vēnit. Ibi hostēs sē ad mare exspectantēs vīdit. Rōmānae autem nāvēs tantae magnitūdinis erant ut terrae appropīnquāre nōn possent. Quā rē territī hostiumque tēla veritī mīlitēs Rōmānī nōn eādem quā solēbant[2] virtūte in proeliō ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit, mīlitēs ē nāvibus ad terram per mare accēdere iussit. Cum mīlitēs, novam rem timentēs, quae imperāverat facere nōllent, is quī decimae legiōnis sīgnum ferēbat, dīs ut sibi praesidiō

[1] *pretending.* [2] *were accustomed.*

essent rogātīs, "Mē," inquit, "sequēminī, mīlitēs, nisi vultis sīgnum in hostium manibus futūrum esse. Ego quae ab imperātōre iussus sum faciam." Haec cum dīxisset, ē nāve per mare in hostēs sīgnum ferre coepit. Tum Rōmānī cohortātī inter sē, nē illum in hostium potestāte relinquerent, sīgnum secūtī in Britannōs impetum fēcērunt. Ācriter ab utrīsque pugnātum est. Rōmānīs tamen arma sua multum prōderant, ita ut summā vī pugnantēs hostēs in fugam darent.

(To follow Lesson 69)

23. Two Brave Rivals

Caesar ē Britanniā in Galliam reversus Cicerōnem lēgātum suum hībernīs praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliam profectus est. Gallī autem absente Rōmānōrum imperātōre lībertāte suā iterum potīrī cōnātī sunt. Cum castra Rōmāna plūrimīs cōpiis circumvēnissent, tantā vī in ea impetum fēcērunt ut ad multam noctem pugnārētur. Neque tamen Rōmānī hostēs pellere potuērunt. Erant in exercitū duo virī fortissimī, Titus Pullō et Lucius Vorēnus. Hī inter sē omnibus annīs dē ōrdine contendēbant. Ē quibus Pullō, cum ācerrimē prō castrīs pugnārētur, dīxit: "Quid, Vorēne, exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrā virtūte iūdicābit."[1] Haec cum dīxisset, ē castrīs prōcessit et ubi plūrimī hostēs vidēbantur, ibi dīmicāvit. Neque Vorēnus sē castrīs tenuit, sed nē timēre vidērētur veritus illum secūtus est. Pīlum Pullō in hostēs mittit atque ūnum ex illīs interficit. Omnēs autem hostēs tēlīs in Pullōnem missīs prōgredī eum prohibuērunt. Gladiō ūtī cōnantem circumveniunt vulnerantque. Sed illī auxiliō Vorēnus adest, in quem hostēs sē convertunt. Gladiō Vorēnus sē dēfendit et ūnō ex hostibus interfectō reliquōs in fugam dat. Sed iterum

[1] *shall decide.*

ā Gallīs oppugnātus cadit. Huic subsidium fert Pullō tam fortiter ut uterque complūribus hostibus interfectīs summo cum clāmōre mīlitum sē in castra recēperit. Sīc fortūnā factum est ut inimīcī alter alterī auxiliō essent.

(To follow Lesson 72)

24. In Lighter Vein

Ennius, vetus Rōmānus poēta,[1] Scīpiōnī, summō Rōmānōrum ducī, amīcissimus erat. Quōdam autem diē Scīpiō Enniī domum cum vēnisset, ut cum poēta conloquerētur, servus quī portam servābat "Dominus," inquit, "meus abest." Vīsus tamen erat Ennius ā Scīpiōne, in domūs superiōre parte sē tenēns. Paucōs post diēs Ennius Scīpiōnis domum vēnit. Cui ille accēdentī "Domī," inquit, "ego nōn sum." Tum Ennius: "Ego autem tē et videō et audiō." "Quid?" Scīpiō respondit, "ego servō tuō crēdidī, tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdēs?"

Lincolnius, nōbilissimus optimusque vir, per bellum illud quod cīvēs nostrī alterī cum alterīs gessērunt, cīvitātī praeerat. Is fābulīs saepe ūtēbātur, ut eīs quī ad sē veniēbant persuādēret. Cum plūrimī ab eō ut aliquid sibi daret rogārent, saepe quid respondēret nōn habuit. Dēnique tamen morbō[2] quōdam labōrābat, quī ā nobīs "variola"[3] appellātur. Tum medicō[4] ille dīxit: "Laetus sum, quod tandem habeō quod ūnī cuique dare possim quī habēre cupiat."

Centuriō quīdam, quī ante bellī fīnem ab exercitū discēdere volēbat, hoc nē faceret ā Shermānō duce impedītus est. Cum pārēre nōllet, Shermānus illī: "Nisi tū," inquit, "in castra redībis, tē interficī iubēbō." Paucōs post diēs cum Lincolnius ad exercitum vēnisset, centuriō ad eum vēnit dīxitque: "Lēgātus mē discēdere nōluit et, nisi ad legiōnem

[1] *poet.* [2] *illness.* [3] *varioloid* (a mild form of smallpox). [4] *physician.*

rediissem, mē interficī iussisset." Lincolnius et ad lēgātum et ad centuriōnem sē convertit, tum illī "Scīsne," inquit, "quid ego faciam? Sī Shermānus sē mē interfectūrum esse dīxisset, celeriter id quod vult facerem. Crēdō eum id facere et velle et posse."

(To follow Lesson 75)

25. An Example of Roman Fortitude

Summa omnibus temporibus Rōmānōrum virtūs fuit, ita ut fortissimus quisque semper maximē ab iīs laudātus sit. Inter multa alia, nōbilissimum Rēgulī factum semper erit. Is bellō Pūnicō prīmō Carthāginiēnsēs terrā marīque vīcerat, sed tandem proeliō superātus ab illīs in vincula coniectus est. Cum pācem cum Rōmānīs Carthāginiēnsēs cōnfīrmāre vellent, Rēgulum Rōmam mīsērunt, ut dē pāce cōnfīrmandā cīvēs certiōrēs faceret. Postulāvērunt autem ut sibi pollicerētur sē, sī Rōmānīs persuādēre nōn posset, in Āfricam reversūrum esse. Rōmam profectus Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, sed patrēs cohortātus est nē pācem cōnfīrmārent. Haec sunt quae illīs dīxit: "Utinam nē ad vōs venīre coāctus essem! Ego turpius nihil vīdī quam nostrōs mīlitēs ab hostibus manibus vinctīs in urbem dūcī. Num spērātis eōs fortiōrēs futūrōs esse, sī pecūniā datā lībertātem recēperint? Mortem mihi huius cōnsiliī praemium exspectandam esse ego sciō. Sed utinam plūrēs mihi vītae essent, ut omnēs patriae prō victōriā darem. Morte meā incitātī, cīvēs, bellum fortissimē gerite." Itaque senātuī persuāsit. Cum autem amīcī nē in Āfricam in vincula redīret postulārent, vir fortissimus pārēre nōluit. Carthāginem rediit, ubi ā Carthāginiēnsibus interfectus est. Sed eius morte Rōmānī quam maximē incitātī Carthāginiēnsēs vīcērunt. Utinam et nostra patria semper in suīs fīnibus tantae virtūtis virōs habeat!

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES[1] FROM ROMAN HISTORY

441. Early Boyhood of Romulus and Remus

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnum relīquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō[2] frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit, quae[3] tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs[4] abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō relīquit. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitūdinēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītum accurrit, mātremque[5] sē gessit.

Cum lupa saepius[6] ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adultī[7] deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs[8] certāminibus vīrēs[9] auxērunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā

[1] These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. [2] **pulsō (pellō) frātre,** abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother.* [3] *but she.* [4] See 311, 7. **impositōs abiēcit**: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, **imposuit et abiēcit.** [5] **mātremque sē gessit,** *acted like a mother.* [6] *very often.* [7] **adultī (adolēscō),** *when grown* (literally, *having grown*). [8] **lūdicrīs certāminibus,** *with playful contests.* [9] From **vīs**; do not confuse with **vir, virī.**

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs īnsidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset[1] eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātīs pāstōribus Albam[2] pro- perāvit.

442. The Founding of Rome

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs quasi[3] Numitōris agrōs īnfēstāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est; at Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōnsīderāns, haud[4] procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret. Nam Remus ōris līneāmentīs[5] erat mātrī simillimus aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet,[6] repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem līberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.[7]

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iīsdem locīs, ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt[8]; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter[9] nōmen novae urbī daret[10] eamque regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt[11] adhibēre. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vīdit. Sīc Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius[12] angustiās inrīdēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum īrātus[13] Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbīs: "Sīc[14] deinde, quīcumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea!" Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō[15] Rōmulus.

[1] For mood and tense, see 369–374. [2] See **237.** [3] *on the ground that,* [4] **haud . . . āgnōsceret,** *came very near recognizing his grandson.* [5] See 157. [6] **dum,** *while,* regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the imperfect; translate "*was keeping.*" [7] **restituō.** [8] **condō.** [9] *as to which of the two.* [10] Why subjunctive? [11] **dēcernō.** [12] *its.* [13] *in anger.* [14] Supply **pereat,** *let him perish,* or some similar verb. [15] For case, see 337.

443. Romulus, First King of the Romans

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in[1] proximō lūcus; hunc asȳlum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs[2] latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent.[3] Nusquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret[4] cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indīcī[5] deinde fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbis, maximē Sabīnī cum līberīs et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque[6] conversae mentēs[7] cum oculīs erant, tum sīgnō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.[8]

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās[9] bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropīnquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,[10] quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum[11] ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī[12] exercitum suum in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiit quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent,[13] vidēlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

[1] **in proximō**, *near by*. [2] *number*. [3] See 364. [4] = **esset**, *would be*. [5] Pres. pass. infin. of **indīcō**, *to be announced*. [6] **eō** = **in spectāculum**. [7] **mentēs cum oculīs**, *minds and eyes alike* (literally, *minds with eyes*). [8] The connective, **et**, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. [9] **ob virginēs raptās**, *on account of the seizure of the maidens* (literally, *on account of the seized maidens*). [10] **nancīscor**. [11] Supine to denote purpose; see 435. [12] **sī . . perdūxisset**, *if she would lead*. [13] *wore*.

dūxit, ubi Tatius scūtīs eam[1] obruī iussit; nam et[2] ea in laevīs habuerant. Sīc impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

444. Romulus, First King of the Romans

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est pugnam cōnseruit. Prīmō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Hostīlius, fortissimē dīmicāns[3] cecidit[4]; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs,[5] imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē[6] aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitit.[7] Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia īnferre et, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs,[8] pācem conciliāvērunt.

Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērum haud ita multō post, occīsō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōminā vit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōnstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs ita ōrdinātīs, cum ad[9] exercitum lūstrandum cōntiōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōnspectū ablātus est.[10] Ad deōs trānsīsse vulgō crēditus est.[11] Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō[12] cōnstitūta, ipse prō deō cultus[13] et Quirīnus est appellātus.

[1] **eam obruī iussit,** *ordered her to be buried.* [2] **et ea,** *these also.* [3] *while fighting.* [4] **cadō.** [5] *hosts.* [6] **longē aliud esse . . . aliud,** *that it is one thing . . . quite another.* [7] **resistō,** *held its ground.* [8] *by beseeching.* [9] See 406, 3. [10] **auferō.** [11] **crēditus est,** *he was believed.* [12] *in honor of Romulus.* [13] **colō.**

445. Numa Pompilius, Second King of the Romans (716–673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā[1] et religiōne. Is Curibus,[2] ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accītus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populum ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima īnstituit. Āram Vestae cōnsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum[3] virginibus dedit. Flāminem[4] Iovis sacerdōtem creāvit eumque īnsīgnī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmissīs, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrīs fulmina essent[5] prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsit. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs[6] rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque exspectābant quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō[7] dēlābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferrī posset, Māmurium fabrum ūndecim scūta eādem fōrmā[8] fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdōtēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdīrent.

446. Numa Pompilius, Second King of the Romans

Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscrīpsit; nefāstōs[9] fāstōsque diēs fēcit; portās Iānō[10] geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam

[1] For case, see 303. [2] **Curibus . . . Sabīnōrum,** *from Cures, a town of the Sabines;* why is the prep. omitted with **Curibus**? [3] *to be kept.* [4] **Flāminem . . creāvit,** *he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter.* [5] **essent prōcūranda,** *should be taken care of* (i.e. *averted*). [6] **aedēs rēgiās,** *the palace.* [7] **sōle ortō** (orior), *at sunrise.* [8] **eādem fōrmā**: see 303. [9] **nefāstōs . . . fēcit,** *he made a distinction between sacred days and business days.* [10] **Iānō geminō,** *in honor of two-headed Janus.*

apertus,[1] in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, sīgnificābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem īnstitūtīs suīs auctōritātem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi[2] cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque[3] monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem[4] medium fōns perennī[5] rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitrīs sē īnferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā[6] pietāte imbuit, ut fidēs ac iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstīnctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus[7] est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

447. Mucius Scaevola

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōnstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam[8] trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte[9] cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope tribūnal cōnstitit.[10] Stīpendium tunc forte mīlitibus dabātur et scrība cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, īgnōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occīdit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus[11] dextram accēnsō[12] ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

[1] Agrees with **Iānus** understood, subject of **sīgnificābat**, *when opened.* [2] **sibi esse**, *that he had:* why is **sibi** dative? [3] **eiusque monitū**, *at her suggestion.* [4] **quem medium**, *the middle of which.* [5] **perennī aquā**: see 303. [6] **eā pietāte**, *with such piety.* [7] **sepeliō**. [8] **veniam trānsfugiendī**, *permission to go over (to the enemy).* [9] *privilege.* [10] **cōnsistō**. [11] **pertrahō**. [12] **accēnsō foculō**, *in a brazier that was burning.*

set. Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī[1] similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēposuit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statua quoque eī honōris grātiā cōnstitūta est.

448. Publius Decius

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeriō[2] Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōnsulibus, tribūnus mīlitum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angustiīs Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēditum collem cōnspēxit imminentem hostium castrīs. Acceptō praesidiō verticem[3] occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōnsulī spatium dedit ad subdūcendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem īnsēderat undique armātīs circumdatō, intempestā nocte per[4] mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis[5] ēvāsit. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est corōnā cīvicā, quae dabātur eī quī[6] cīvēs in bellō servāsset. Cōnsul fuit bellō Latīnō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum[7] utrīque cōnsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,[8] utrīus cornū[9] in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvovēret. Inclīnante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus dēvōvit. Armātus in equum īnsiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs immīsit; corruit obrutus tēlīs et victōriam suīs relīquit.

[1] Refers to **Mūcius**. [2] **Valeriō . . . cōnsulibus**, *in the consulship of*, etc., abl. absolute; see 316. [3] *the summit of the hill*. [4] **per . . . cūstōdiās**, *through the midst of the enemy's pickets*. [5] *safely*. [6] *one who*. [7] **cum . . . obvēnisset**; *when the two consuls had dreamed* (literally, *when it had come to each of the two consuls by a dream*). [8] **ut . . . dēvovēret** is subject of **convēnit**; translate "*it was agreed among them that he whose* (**utrīus**), etc., *should*," etc. [9] Nominative.

449. Gaius Duilius

(260 B.C.)

I. Gāius Duīlius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus[1] dēvīcit. Quī cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vēlōcitāte superārī, manūs[2] ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae manūs[2] ubi hostīlem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānsgrediēbātur Rōmānus[3] et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dīmicābant, unde[4] Rōmānīs, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnātae nāvēs Pūnicae trīgintā, mersae[5] tredecim.

Duīlius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invictī[6] terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum[7] possent. Itaque Duīliō[8] concessum est ut per omnem vītam praelūcente fūnāli et praecinente tībīcine ā cēnā redīret.

II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicae, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmittēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Veritus autem nē in patriā classis[9] āmissae poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā āvertit, nam ex illā īnfēlīcī pugnā priusquam clādis nūntius domum pervenīret quendam ex amīcīs Carthāginem mīsit. Quī postquam cūriam intrāvit, "Cōnsulit"[10] inquit "vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum magnīs cōpiīs maritimīs īnstrūctīs advēnerit, num cum eō cōnflīgere dēbeat?" Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn[11] cōnflīgī oportē-

[1] **prīmus dēvīcit**, *was the first to conquer.* [2] **manūs ferreās**, *grappling irons.* [3] *the Romans*, a collective noun. [4] *and as a consequence.* [5] **mergō.** [6] **invictī terrā**, *victorious on land.* [7] **plūrimum possent**, *they were supreme.* [8] **Duīliō concessum est ut**, etc., *Duilius was allowed to*, etc. [9] **classis āmissae**, *for losing the fleet.* [10] **Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num**, *asks your advice as to whether.* [11] *that.*

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflīxit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuērunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fierī dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sīc Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbātur.

450. Appius Claudius Pulcher

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritātis, cōnsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōnsilia palam reprehendēbat sēque, quō[1] diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōnfectūrum esse iactitābat. Quī cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia[2] habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāsset, pullōs nōn exīre ē caveā neque vēscī, inrīdēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse[3] nōllent. Ea rēs cum, quasi[4] īrātīs diīs, mīlitēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānīs accepta est: octō eōrum mīllia caesa sunt, vīgintī mīllia capta. Quā rē Claudius posteā ā populō condemnātus est damnātiōnisque īgnōminiam voluntāriā morte praevēnit. Ea rēs calamitātī[5] fuit etiam Claudiae,[5] cōnsulis sorōrī: quae ā lūdīs pūblicīs revertēns in cōnfertā multitūdine aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit ut frāter suus Pulcher revīvīsceret atque iterum classem āmitteret, quō[6] minor turba Rōmae foret.[7] Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque[8] eī dicta est multa.

[1] **quō diē**, *on the same day that.* [2] **auspicia habēret**, *was consulting the auspices.* [3] Infinitive of **edō**, *to eat.* [4] **quasi īrātīs diīs**, *because (as they thought) the gods were angry.* [5] See 294, 295. [6] **quō**, *so that.* [7] **esset.** [8] **gravisque . . . multa**, *and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.*

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

451. The Belgae form a Confederacy against the Romans

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hībernīs est,[1] omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter[2] sē dabant. Coniūrandī[3] hae erant causae: prīmum nōlēbant[4] nostrum exercitum ad sē[5] addūcī,[6] deinde ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitābantur. Hī populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnūllī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs[7] imperiīs studēbant. Ab nōnnūllīs etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iīs quī condūcere hominēs poterant[8] vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō[9] nostrō cōnsequī[10] poterant.

CHAPTER II

452. Caesar proceeds against the Belgae

Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus est Caesar. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre[11] Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit.[12] In interiōrem[13] Galliam cum hīs legiōnibus Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse paucīs post[14] diēbus ad exercitum vēnit. Senonēs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant manum cōgī et exercitum Belgārum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficīscī.[15]

[1] *was.* [2] **inter sē**, *one another* (literally, *between themselves*). [3] *of conspiring.* [4] From **nōlō**. [5] *them.* [6] Present passive infinitive, *to be led.* [7] **novīs imperiīs**, *revolution.* [8] Imperfect of **possum**. [9] **imperiō nostrō**, *under our rule.* [10] *to obtain.* [11] See map of Gaul, page 10. [12] From **cōnscrībō**. [13] *the interior of.* [14] *afterwards.* [15] *to set out.*

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

453. The Remi immediately submit to Caesar

Eō[1] dē imprōvīsō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex[2] Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, quī "Nōs" inquiunt "omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidīs[3] recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.[4] Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, neque potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōnsentīre.[5]"

CHAPTER IV

454. Caesar learns from the Remi the Strength of the Enemy's Forces

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sīc reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs[6] Cimbrīsque intrā fīnēs suōs ingredī[7] prohibitīs eārum rērum[8] memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē mīlitārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia[9] sē habēre

[1] *there, i.e.* **ad fīnēs Belgārum.** [2] **ex Belgīs,** *of the Belgae.* [3] **oppidīs recipere** = **in oppida recipere.** [4] From **coniungō.** [5] *from conspiring.* [6] **Teutonīs . . . prohibitīs,** abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause. [7] *from entering.* [8] *deeds;* refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri. [9] **omnia explōrāta,** *full information.*

explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō posse; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīllia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā[1] Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad[2] hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque tōtīus bellī summam omnium voluntāte dēferrī.

CHAPTER V

455. Caesar receives Hostages from the Remi and encamps on the Banks of the Axona

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad[3] diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut manūs hostium distineantur. Id fierī potest, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint[4] et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātīs eum ab sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vīdit, flūmen Axonam exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae[5] rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et quae[6] post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

[1] Ablative of time within which. Why is **memoriā**, 454, line 18, ablative?
[2] *on*. [3] **ad diem**, *to the very day*. [4] Future perfect indicative. [5] **Quae rēs**, *this position, i.e.* crossing the river. [6] **quae . . . essent**, *the rear*.

CHAPTER VI

456. The Belgae lay Siege to Bibrax, a Town of the Remi

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīllia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum[1] est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus[2] undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine[3] factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī.[4] Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium ad Caesarem mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.[5]

CHAPTER VII

457. The Belgae abandon the Siege of Bibrax

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem[6] ducibus ūsus[7] quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō[8] oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, multīs vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab[9] mīllibus passuum

[1] **sustentātum est**, *the attack was sustained* (literally, *it was sustained*). [2] Dative, governed by **circumiectā**. [3] This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. [4] Dative of possession. [5] Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in **nūntium mittit**. [6] **īsdem ducibus**, *the same persons as guides*. [7] ***using***. [8] For construction, see 294, 295. [9] An adverb, *away, off*.

minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut[1] fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīllibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

CHAPTER VIII

458. Description of Caesar's Camp. He awaits the Attack of the Belgae

Caesar propter multitūdinem hostium et propter opīniō-
5 nem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit, cottīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid[2] hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur.[3] Nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit. Locus prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam erat nātūrā idōneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, pau-
10 lulum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum[4] adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat. Ab[5] utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quādringentōrum et ad[6] extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
15 aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs ab[5] lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās[7] īnstrūxerant.

CHAPTER IX

459. The Belgae try to cross the Axona

20 Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant[8]

[1] *as;* **ut** with the indicative means "*as*" or "*when.*" [2] **quid . . . posset** *what the enemy could do by their valor.* [3] *he tried to ascertain.* [4] **tantum patēbat quantum locī,** *spread over as much space as.* [5] *on.* [6] **ad extrēmās fossās,** *at the ends of the trenches.* [7] See 311, 7. [8] *were waiting to see.*

nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut[1] impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre[2] equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus[3] potuissent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur[4] commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.[4]

CHAPTER X

460. The Belgae are defeated in the Battle that Follows

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impedītōs in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs[5] interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē[6] expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem[7] prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

[1] **ut . . . aggrederentur,** *to attack,* depending upon **parātī erant.** [2] **secundiōre . . . nostrīs,** abl. absolute; *since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men.* [3] *not.* [4] These subjunctives also express the purpose of **trādūcere cōnātī sunt.** [5] See 311, 7. [6] **dē . . . spem sē fefellisse,** *that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . .* (literally, *that hope had failed them about . . .*). [7] *unfavorable.*

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum[1] esse domum suam quemque revertī ad suōs fīnēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam haec ratiō[2] eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs[3] persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

461. The Romans pursue the Belgae as they Disperse

Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō fēcērunt[4] ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā[5] dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce, cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,[6] praemīsit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīllia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt.

Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum[7] fuit diēī spatium, sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut[8] erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

[1] **optimum esse**, *that it was best.* [2] *consideration.* [3] **Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat**, *these could not be persuaded* (literally, *it could not be persuaded these*). [4] **fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur**, *they made their departure seem.* [5] **quā dē causā**, *why.* [6] See 364. [7] **quantum . . . spatium**, *as the length of the day allowed.* [8] *as.*

CHAPTER XII

462. Caesar marches against the Suessiones, and captures the Town Noviodunum

Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem expugnāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vīneīs[1] ad oppidum āctīs,[2] aggere[3] iactō, turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī Suessiōnēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus[4] Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

CHAPTER XIII

463. The Bellovaci also surrender to Caesar

Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīllia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs[5] nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs[6] manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

[1] Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. [2] *moved*, from agō. [3] The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. [4] **petentibus Rēmīs**, *at the request of the Remi*, abl. absolute. [5] For comparison, see 272. [6] **pandō**.

CHAPTER XIV

464. Diviciacus speaks in Behalf of the Bellovaci

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse: impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs [1] fuissent,[2] quod [3] intellegerent [2] quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod [4] sī fēcerit,[2] Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī [5] qua bella inciderint,[2] sustentāre cōnsuērint.[2]

CHAPTER XV

465. Caesar's Reply. Description of the Nervii

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte [6] atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus [7]; patī nihil vīnī [8] reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī: esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī [9] sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

[1] *authors.* [2] For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427. — **cōnsuērint** = cōnsuēverint. [3] *because.* [4] **Quod . . . fēcerit,** *if he should do this.* [5] **sī . . . inciderint,** *whatever wars occurred.* [6] For construction, see 303. [7] See 231. [8] See 251. [9] *because.*

sent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

466. The Nervii await the Approach of Caesar

Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīllia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā[1] cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs; exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque[2] per aetātem[3] ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō[4] propter palūdēs exercituī[5] aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

467. The Nervii plan to take Caesar by Surprise

Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī ūnā[6] iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt. Hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās[7] legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam[8] negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum[9] ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Nerviī autem antīquitus, quō[10] facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent,

[1] **ūnā cum,** *along with.* [2] *and those who.* [3] Do not confuse this word with **aestās, -ātis.** [4] *where.* [5] Dative of possession, 231. [6] *along with him.* [7] **inter singulās legiōnēs,** *between each two legions.* [8] **quicquam negōtī,** *any trouble* [9] **futūrum ut,** *the result would be that.* [10] **quō facilius,** *that they might the more easily.*

fēcerant saepēs[1] quae īnstar mūrī mūnīmenta praebērent. Hīs rēbus iter agminis nostrī impedītum[2] īrī Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

468. Description of the Roman Camping Ground

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminávimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus[3] apertus, ab[4] superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum[5] flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

469. The Nervii carry out their Plan of Attack

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs. Sed quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque[6] impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī, cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs[7] īnsequī nōn audēbant.

[1] *Hedges*, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and briers to grow among them. [2] **impedītum īrī**; future passive infinitive. [3] *at the foot.* [4] **ab superiōre parte**, *in the upper part.* [5] *along.* [6] See 294, 295. [7] Agrees with **hostēs** understood.

Interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere[1] dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus[2] nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō[3] colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

CHAPTER XX

470. Quick Work by Caesar. Splendid Discipline of the Troops

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda[4]: vēxillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō[5] — scientia[6] atque ūsus[6] mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī[7] sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque[8] legiōnibus singulōs[9] lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil[10] iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae[11] vidēbantur administrābant.

[1] **opere dīmēnsō**, *after laying out the work.* **Dīmēnsō** from **dīmētior.** [2] **in manibus nostrīs**, *close upon us.* [3] **adversō colle**, *up the hill.* [4] See 438, 439. [5] See 294, 295. [6] in apposition with **rēs.** [7] **ipsī sibi praescrībere . . . poterant**, *they could direct themselves on their own responsibility* **(ipsī).** [8] *his (respective).* [9] *each.* [10] *not . . . at all.* [11] **quae vidēbantur**, *whatever seemed best.*

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

471. First Declension or Stems in **-ā-**

	Singular	Case Endings	Plural	Case Endings
Nom.	stella	**-a**	stellae	**-ae**
Gen.	stellae	**-ae**	stellārum	**-ārum**
Dat.	stellae	**-ae**	stellīs	**-īs**
Acc.	stellam	**-am**	stellās	**-ās**
Abl.	stellā	**-ā**	stellīs	**-īs**

472. Second Declension or Stems in **-o-**

Singular

	masc.	case endings	neut.	case endings
Nom.	hortus	**-us**	dōnum	**-um**
Gen.	hortī	**-ī**	dōnī	**-ī**
Dat.	hortō	**-ō**	dōnō	**-ō**
Acc.	hortum	**-um**	dōnum	**-um**
Abl.	hortō	**-ō**	dōnō	**-ō**

Plural

Nom.	hortī	**-ī**	dōna	**-a**
Gen.	hortōrum	**-ōrum**	dōnōrum	**-ōrum**
Dat.	hortīs	**-īs**	dōnīs	**-īs**
Acc.	hortōs	**-ōs**	dōna	**-a**
Abl.	hortīs	**-īs**	dōnīs	**-īs**

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **horte.**

	Singular			
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	fīlius
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	fīlī, -iī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	fīliō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	fīlium
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	fīliō
	Plural			
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	fīliī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	fīliōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	fīliīs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	fīliōs
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	fīliīs

a. The vocative singular of **fīlius** is **fīlī.**

473. THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

	Singular				Case Endings for Consonant Stems M. and F.	N.
Nom.	dux	mīles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
Gen.	ducis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
Dat.	ducī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	ducem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	
Abl.	duce	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e
	Plural					
Nom.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Gen.	ducum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
Dat.	ducibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Abl.	ducibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

	Singular			
Nom.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
Gen.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
Dat.	cōnsulī	hominī	patrī	corporī
Acc.	cōnsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus
Abl.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore
	Plural			
Nom.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
Gen.	cōnsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
Abl.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

b. -I- STEMS

	Singular				Case Endings for -i- stems	
					M. and F.	N.
Nom.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)	
Gen.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is	-is
Dat.	collī	caedī	montī	animālī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em	
Abl.	colle	caede	monte	animālī	-e	-ī
	Plural					
Nom.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	collium	caedium	montium	animālium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	collīs, ēs	caedīs, ēs	montīs, ēs	animālia	-īs, ēs	-ia
Abl.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

474. Fourth Declension or Stems in -u-

	Singular			
	masc.	case endings	neut.	case endings
Nom.	cāsus	-us	cornū	-ū
Gen.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
Dat.	cāsuī, ū	-uī, ū	cornū	-ū
Acc.	cāsum	-um	cornū	-ū
Abl.	cāsū	-ū	cornū	-ū

		Plural Case Endings		
	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	cāsuum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

475. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

					Case Endings	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ĕī	-ērum
DAT.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ĕī	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

476. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

		Singular	
NOM.	vir	vīs	deus
GEN.	virī	—	deī
DAT.	virō	—	deō
ACC.	virum	vim	deum
ABL.	virō	vī	deō
		Plural	
NOM.	virī	vīrēs	deī, diī, dī
GEN.	virōrum	vīrium	deōrum, deum
DAT.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, dīs
ACC.	virōs	vīrēs	deōs
ABL.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, dīs
		Singular	
NOM.	senex	iter	domus
GEN.	senis	itineris	domūs
DAT.	senī	itinerī	domuī, ō
ACC.	senem	iter	domum
ABL.	sene	itinere	domō, ū

		Plural	
Nom.	senēs	itinera	domūs
Gen.	senum	itinerum	domuum, ōrum
Dat.	senibus	itineribus	domibus
Acc.	senēs	itinera	domōs, ūs
Abl.	senibus	itineribus	domibus

ADJECTIVES

477. First and Second Declensions

	Singular		
	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
	Plural		
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	Singular		
	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō
	Plural		
Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	niger	nigra	nigrum
Gen.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
Dat.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
Acc.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
Abl.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō
	Plural		
Nom.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Gen.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
Dat.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
Acc.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
Abl.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

478. Third Declension

	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	Plural		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrīs, ēs	ācrīs, ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

	Singular			
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	facilis	facile	ferāx	ferāx
Gen.	facilis	facilis	ferācis	ferācis
Dat.	facilī	facilī	ferācī	ferācī
Acc.	facilem	facile	ferācem	ferāx
Abl.	facilī	facilī	ferācī, e	ferācī, e

			Plural	
	masc. and fem.	neut.	masc. and fem.	neut.
Nom.	facilēs	facilia	ferācēs	ferācia
Gen.	facilium	facilium	ferācium	ferācium
Dat.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus	ferācibus
Acc.	facilīs, ēs	facilia	ferācīs, ēs	ferācia
Abl.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus	ferācibus

479. Present Active Participles

	Singular		Plural	
	masc. and fem.	neut.	masc. and fem.	neut.
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs, ēs	amantia
Abl.	amante, ī	amānte, ī	amantibus	amantibus
Nom.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntem	iēns	euntīs, ēs	euntia
Abl.	eunte, ī	eunte, ī	euntibus	euntibus

480. Irregular Adjectives

	Singular			Plural		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc. and fem.	neut.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs, trēs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīllia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīllium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīllibus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīllia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīllibus

481. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāt-)	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, a, um
fortis (fort-)	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, a, um
vēlōx (vēlōc-)	vēlōcior, vēlōcius	vēlōcissimus, a, um
pulcher (pulchr-)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, a, um
similis (simil-)	similior, similius	simillimus, a, um

482. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, īs	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre, ī	lātiōre, ī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
NOM.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	——	plūs	plūrēs, īs	plūra
ABL.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus

483. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um	——, plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multī, ae, a	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
īnferus	īnferior	īnfimus, īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus summus

(Lacking positive supplied by adverb or preposition)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[cis, citrā, *this side*]	citerior	citimus
[in, intrā, *within*]	interior	intimus
[prae, prō, *before*]	prior	prīmus
[prope, *near*]	propior	proximus
[ultrā, *beyond*]	ulterior	ultimus

484. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (carus)	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, *little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long, for a long time*	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē

485. NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, a, um	prīmus, a, um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus (*or* alter)
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
22.	vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	vīcēsimus secundus *or* alter et vīcēsimus

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
28.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus *or* centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600.	sescentī	sēscentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1,000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2,000.	duo mīllia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000.	centum mīllia	centiēs mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

486. PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	REFLEXIVE (3D PERS.) SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——	——
GEN.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

487. DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	īdem	ĕădem	ĭdem	eīdem īdem	eaedem	ĕădem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrun-dem	eārun-dem	eōrun-dem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem īsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	ĭdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	ĕădem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem īsdem

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

488. Relative

	Singular			Plural		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

489. Interrogative

	Singular			Plural		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

490. INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

491. First Conjugation. Verbs in ā

Prin. Parts: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus — *love*

INDICATIVE

Active			Passive	
I love, am loving, do love		PRESENT	*I am loved, am being loved*	
Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
amō	amāmus		amor	amāmur
amās	amātis		amāris, re	amāminī
amat	amant		amātur	amantur
I was loving, loved, did love		IMPERFECT	*I was loved, was being loved*	
amābam	amābāmus		amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis		amābāris, re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant		amābātur	amābantur
I shall love		FUTURE	*I shall be loved*	
amābō	amābimus		amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis		amāberis, re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt		amābitur	amābuntur
I have loved, loved		PERFECT	*I have been loved, was loved*	
amāvī	amāvimus		amātus sum	amātī sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis		(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
amāvit	amāvērunt, ēre		est	sunt
I had loved		PLUPERFECT	*I had been loved*	
amāveram	amāverāmus		amātus eram	amātī erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis		(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
amāverat	amāverant		erat	erant
I shall have loved		FUTURE PERFECT	*I shall have been loved*	
amāverō	amāverimus		amātus erō	amātī erimus
amāveris	amāveritis		(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
amāverit	amāverint		erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	IMPERFECT		
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur
	PERFECT		
amāverim	amāverīmus	amātus sim	amātī sīmus
amāverīs	amāverītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
amāverit	amāverint	sit	sint
	PLUPERFECT		
amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus essem	amātī essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
2. amā, *love thou*	2. amāte, *love ye*	2. amāre, *be thou loved*	2. amāminī, *be ye loved*
FUTURE			
2. amātō, *thou shalt love*	2. amātōte, *you shall love*	2. amātor, *thou shalt be loved*	2. ———
3. amātō, *he shall love*	3. amantō, *they shall love*	3. amātor, *he shall be loved*	3. amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

amāre, *to love*	PRESENT	amārī, *to be loved*
amātūrus (a, um) esse, *to be about to love*	FUTURE	amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved*
amāvisse, *to have loved*	PERFECT	amātus (a, um) esse, *to have been loved*

PARTICIPLES

amāns, antis, *loving*	PRESENT	——— ———
amātūrus, a, um, *about to love*	FUTURE	GER. amandus, a, um, *to be loved*
——— ———	PERFECT	amātus, a, um, *having been loved, loved*

GERUND

GEN. amandī, *of loving* ACC. amandum, *loving*
DAT. amandō, *for loving* ABL. amandō, *by loving*

SUPINE

amātum amātū

492. Second Conjugation. Verbs in ē

Prin. Parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** — *advise*

INDICATIVE

Active		Passive	
		PRESENT	
I advise, am advising, do advise		*I am advised, am being advised*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
I was advising, advised, did advise		IMPERFECT	*I was advised, was being advised*	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
I shall advise		FUTURE	*I shall be advised*	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
I have advised, advised		PERFECT	*I have been advised, I was advised*	
monuī	monuimus	monitus sum	monitī sumus
monuistī	monuistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
monuit	monuērunt, ēre	est	sunt
I had advised		PLUPERFECT	*I had been advised*	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant
I shall have advised		FUTURE PERFECT	*I shall have been advised*	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus erō	monitī erimus
monueris	monueritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	IMPERFECT		
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
	PERFECT		
monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint
	PLUPERFECT		
monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
2. monē, *advise thou*	2. monēte, *advise ye*	2. monēre, *be thou advised*	2. monēminī, *be ye advised*
FUTURE			
2. monētō, *thou shalt advise*	2. monētōte, *you shall advise*	2. & 3. monētor, *thou shalt (he shall) be advised*	2. ———
3. monētō, *he shall advise*	3. monentō, *they shall advise*		3. monentor, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

monēre, *to advise*	PRESENT	monērī, *to be advised*
monitūrus (a, um) esse, *to be about to advise*	FUTURE	monitum īrī, *to be about to be advised*
monuisse, *to have advised*	PERFECT	monitus (a, um) esse, *to have been advised*

PARTICIPLES

monēns, entis, *advising*	PRESENT	——— ———
monitūrus, a, um, *about to advise*	FUTURE	GER. monendus, a, um, *to be advised*
——— ———	PERFECT	monitus, a, um, *having been advised, advised*

GERUND

GEN. monendī, *of advising* ACC. monendum, *advising*
DAT. monendō, *for advising* ABL. monendō, *by advising*

SUPINE

monitum monitū

493. Third Conjugation. Verbs in e

Prin. Parts: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus** — *lead*

INDICATIVE

Active			Passive	
I lead, am leading, do lead		PRESENT	*I am led, am being led*	
Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
dūcō	dūcimus		dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis		dūceris, re	dūciminī
dūcit	dūcunt		dūcitur	dūcuntur
I was leading, led, did lead		IMPERFECT	*I was led, was being led*	
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus		dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis		dūcēbāris, re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbat	dūcēbant		dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur
I shall lead		FUTURE	*I shall be led*	
dūcam	dūcēmus		dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis		dūcēris, re	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent		dūcētur	dūcentur
I have led, led		PERFECT	*I have been led, was led*	
dūxī	dūximus		ductus sum	ductī sumus
dūxistī	dūxistis		(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
dūxit	dūxērunt, ēre		est	sunt
I had led		PLUPERFECT	*I had been led*	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus		ductus eram	ductī erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis		(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant		erat	erant
I shall have led		FUTURE PERFECT	*I shall have been led*	
dūxerō	dūxerimus		ductus erō	ductī erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis		(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint		erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris, re	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur
IMPERFECT			
dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris, re	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	PERFECT		
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
dūxerim	dūxerīmus	ductus sim	ductī sīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	sit	sint
	PLUPERFECT		
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus essem	ductī essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
2. dūc,[1] *lead thou*	2. dūcite, *lead ye*	2. dūcere, *be thou led*	2. dūciminī, *be ye led*
FUTURE			
2. dūcitō, *thou shalt lead*	2. dūcitōte, *ye shall lead*	2. dūcitor, *thou shalt be led*	2. ———
3. dūcitō, *he shall lead*	3. dūcuntō, *they shall lead*	3. dūcitor, *he shall be led*	3. dūcuntor, *they shall be led*

INFINITIVE

dūcere, *to lead*	PRESENT	dūcī, *to be led*
ductūrus (a, um) esse, *to be about to lead*	FUTURE	ductum īrī, *to be about to be led*
dūxisse, *to have led*	PERFECT	ductus (a, um) esse, *to have been led*

PARTICIPLES

dūcēns, entis, *leading*	PRESENT	——— ———
ductūrus, a, um, *about to lead*	FUTURE	GER. dūcendus, a, um, *to be led*
——— ———	PERFECT	ductus, *having been led, led*

GERUND

GEN. dūcendī, *of leading* ACC. dūcendum, *leading*
DAT. dūcendō, *for leading* ABL. dūcendō, *by leading*

SUPINE

ductum ductū

[1] **dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō,** have as present imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer; the regular form of other verbs ends in **-e,** as **gerō,** imperative gere.

494. Fourth Conjugation. Verbs in ī

Prin. Parts: **audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus** — *hear*

INDICATIVE

Active			Passive		
I hear, am hearing, do hear		PRESENT	*I am heard, am being heard*	
Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
audiō	audīmus		audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis		audīris, re	audīminī
audit	audiunt		audītur	audiuntur
I was hearing, heard, did hear		IMPERFECT	*I was heard, was being heard*	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus		audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis		audiēbāris, re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant		audiēbātur	audiēbantur
I shall hear		FUTURE	*I shall be heard*	
audiam	audiēmus		audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis		audiēris, re	audiēminī
audiet	audient		audiētur	audientur
I have heard, heard		PERFECT	*I have been heard, I was heard*	
audīvī	audīvimus		audītus sum	audītī sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis		(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
audīvit	audīvērunt, ēre		est	sunt
I had heard		PLUPERFECT	*I had been heard*	
audīveram	audīverāmus		audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis		(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
audīverat	audīverant		erat	erant
I shall have heard		FUTURE PERFECT	*I shall have been heard*	
audīverō	audīverimus		audītus erō	audītī erimus
audīveris	audīveritis		(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
audīverit	audīverint		erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	IMPERFECT		
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur
	PERFECT		
audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
audīverit	audīverint	sit	sint
	PLUPERFECT		
audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT		
2. audī, *hear thou*	2. audīte, *hear ye*	2. audīre, *be thou heard*	2. audīminī, *be ye heard*
	FUTURE		
2. audītō, *thou shalt hear*	2. audītōte, *you shall hear*	2. audītor, *thou shalt be heard*	2. ———
3. audītō, *he shall hear*	3. audiuntō, *they shall hear*	3. audītor, *he shall be heard*	3. audiuntor, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE

audīre, *to hear*	PRESENT	audīrī, *to be heard*
audītūrus (a, um) esse, *to be about to hear*	FUTURE	audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard*
audīvisse, *to have heard*	PERFECT	audītus (a, um) esse, *to have been heard*

PARTICIPLES

audiēns, ientis, *hearing*	PRESENT	——— ———
audītūrus, a, um, *about to hear*	FUTURE	GER. audiendus, a, um, *to be heard*
——— ———	PERFECT	audītus, *having been heard, heard*

GERUND

GEN. audiendī, *of hearing* ACC. audiendum, *hearing*
DAT. audiendō, *for hearing* ABL. audiendō, *by hearing*

SUPINE

audītum audītū

495. Third Conjugation. Verbs in iō

Prin. Parts: **capiō, ere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE

Active		Passive	
I take, am taking, do take		PRESENT	*I am taken, am being taken*
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis, re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
		IMPERFECT	
I was taking, took, did take			*I was taken, was being taken*
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
		FUTURE	
I shall take			*I shall be taken*
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris, re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
		PERFECT	
I have taken, took			*I have been taken, I was taken*
cēpī	cēpimus	captus sum	captī sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
cēpit	cēpērunt, ēre	est	sunt
		PLUPERFECT	
I had taken			*I had been taken*
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	captī erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
cēperat	cēperant	erat	erant
		FUTURE PERFECT	
I shall have taken			*I shall have been taken*
cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	captī erimus
cēperis	cēperitis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
cēperit	cēperint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris, re	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
IMPERFECT			
caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris, re	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur
PERFECT			
cēperim	cēperīmus	captus sim	captī sīmus
cēperīs	cēperītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
cēperit	cēperint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
2. cape, *take thou*	2. capite, *take ye*	2. capere, *be thou taken*	2. capiminī, *be ye taken*
FUTURE			
2. capitō, *thou shalt take*	2. capitōte, *ye shall take*	2. capitor, *thou shalt be taken*	2. ———
3. capitō, *he shall take*	3. capiuntō, *they shall take*	3. capitor, *he shall be taken*	3. capiuntor, *they shall be taken*

INFINITIVE

capere, *to take*	PRESENT	capī, *to be taken*
captūrus (a, um) esse, *to be about to take*	FUTURE	captum īrī, *to be about to be taken*
cēpisse, *to have taken*	PERFECT	captus (a, um) esse, *to have been taken*

PARTICIPLES

capiēns, ientis, *taking*	PRESENT	———	———
captūrus, a, um, *about to take*	FUTURE	GER. capiendus, a, um, *to be taken*	
———	———	PERFECT	captus, a, um, *having been taken, taken*

GERUND

GEN. capiendī, *of taking* ACC. capiendum, *taking*
DAT. capiendō, *for taking* ABL. capiendō, *by taking*

SUPINE

captum captū

IRREGULAR VERBS

496. PRIN. PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est (*he, she, it*) *is*	sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he was*	erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he will be* .	erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*	fuimus, *we have been, were*
fuistī, *you have been, were*	fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuit, *he has been, was*	fuērunt / fuēre } *they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fuerim	fuerīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerīs	fuerītis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	FUTURE
es, *be thou*	estō, *thou shalt be*
este, *be ye*	estō, *he shall be*
	estōte, *ye shall be*
	suntō, *they shall be*

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	esse, *to be*	——
PERF.	fuisse, *to have been*	——
FUT.	futūrus esse (fore), *to be about to be*	futūrus, *about to be*

497. PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī,** *am able, can*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	*I am able, can*			
	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF.	*I was able, could*			
	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	*I shall be able*			
	poterō	poterimus		

PERF. *I have been able, could*	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus
PLUP. *I had been able,*	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P. *I shall have been able*	potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse, *to be able* PERF. potuisse, *to have been able*

498.

PRIN. PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus,** *benefit*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES. *I benefit*	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMPF.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF.	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerīmus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse
FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus

499. PRIN. PARTS:

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, ēs, etc.	nōlam, ēs, etc.	mālam, ēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

		IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	——	nōlī nōlīte	——
FUT.	——	[nōlītō, etc.]	——

		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

		PARTICIPLE	
PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	——

500. PRIN. PARTS: **eō, īre, iī, itum**, *go*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam, ībās, ībat, etc.		īrem	ītō ītō	ītōte euntō
FUT.	ībō, ībis, ībit, etc.		——		
PERF.	iī, īstī, iit, etc.		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	īre	iēns, euntis
PERF.	īsse	itum
FUT.	itūrus esse	itūrus

	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	eundī	
DAT.	eundō	
ACC.	eundum	itum
ABL.	eundō	——

501.

PRIN. PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *be made, become, happen*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	fīō	——	fīam	fī	fīte
	fīs	——			
	fit	fīunt			
IMPF.	fīēbam		fierem		
FUT.	fīam, fīēs, etc.		——		
PERF.	factus sum		factus sim		
PLUP.	factus eram		factus essem		
F. P.	factus erō				

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	fierī	GER.	faciendus
PERF.	factus esse	PERF.	factus
FUT.	factum īrī		

502. PRIN. PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *bear, carry*

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	Singular	*Singular*
IMPF.	ferēbam	ferēbar
FUT.	feram, ēs, etc.	ferar, ēris, etc.
PERF.	tulī	lātus sum
PLUP.	tuleram	lātus eram
F. P.	tulerō	lātus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	——	
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
	——	PERF.	lātus

	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	ferendī	——
DAT.	ferendō	——
ACC.	ferendum	lātum
ABL.	ferendō	lātū

503. DEPONENT VERBS

PRIN. PARTS: **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum,** *urge, entreat*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *get possession of*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, re	verēris, re	sequeris, re	potīris, re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortār	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum
hortātū	veritū	secūtū	potītū

504. First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation

INDICATIVE

Pres. amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*
Impf. amātūrus eram, *I was about to love*
Fut. amātūrus erō, *I shall be about to love*
Perf. amātūrus fuī, *I have been* or *was about to love*
Plup. amātūrus fueram, *I had been about to love*
F. P. amātūrus fuerō, *I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. amātūrus sim
Impf. amātūrus essem
Perf. amātūrus fuerim
Plup. amātūrus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres. amātūrus esse
Perf. amātūrus fuisse

For the Other Conjugations

Pres. monitūrus sum, *I am about to advise*
ductūrus sum, *I am about to lead*
captūrus sum, *I am about to take*
audītūrus sum, *I am about to hear*, etc.

505. Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

INDICATIVE

Pres. amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved*
Impf. amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
Fut. amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*

INDICATIVE — *Continued*

PERF. **amandus** fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
PLUP. **amandus** fueram, *I had had to be loved*
F. P. **amandus** fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES. **amandus** sim
IMPF. **amandus** essem
PERF. **amandus** fuerim
PLUP. **amandus** fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES. **amandus** esse, *to have to be loved*
PERF. **amandus** fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

PRES. **monendus** sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard*, etc.

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Nominative Case. — The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case. [34, 1.]

A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

Genitive Case. — The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun. [38.]

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive), denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends. [251.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.* [303.]

Dative Case. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. [58, 2.]

The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites. [163.]

The dative is used with *est, sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. [231.]

The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it. [295.]

Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative case. [343.]

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, often govern the dative. [394.]

Accusative Case. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. [46, 2.]

The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [184, 1.]

Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in;* with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the accusative without a preposition. [237, 2.]

Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. [245.]

Ablative Case. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [94.]

Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. [118.]

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [131.]

The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. [142.]

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. [148.]

The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used. [157.]

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used. [211.]

Place where is expressed by the ablative with *in;* with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 1.]

Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex;* with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 3.]

After comparatives with *quam* the same case is used after *quam* as before it. After comparatives without *quam* the ablative is used. [260.]

The measure of difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition. [267.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus*, *maximus*, *summus*, *tantus*. [303.]

The ablative is used with the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, and their compounds. [337.]

Locative Case. — Place where is expressed by the locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*. [237, 1.]

Agreement. — A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. [46, 1.]

An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains. [58, 1.]

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [65.]

A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. [184, 3.]

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent. [197.]

The Subjunctive. — Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with *ut* if the clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *nē* if the purpose clause is negative. [351.]

Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative. [358.]

Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion. [364.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

The subjunctive with *nē*, that, or *ut*, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing. [385.]

In a *cum* clause expressing time, the verb is usually sub-

junctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used. [387, 1.]

In a *cum* clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive. [387, 2.]

Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without *utinam;* wishes hopeless in present time by *utinam* with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by *utinam* with the pluperfect subjunctive. [425.]

Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. [329.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive. [430.]

Supine. — The supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. [435.]

Sequence of Tenses. — A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
dat.	dative.
def.	defective.
dem.	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
determ.	determinative.
dim.	diminutive.
f.	feminine.
fut.	future.
gen.	genitive.
impers.	impersonal.
indecl.	indeclinable.
indef.	indefinite.
interrog.	interrogative.
intr.	intransitive.
irr.	irregular.
loc.	locative.
m.	masculine.
n., ***neut.*** . . .	neuter.
neg.	negative.
nom.	nominative.
num.	numeral.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
perf.	perfect.
pl., ***plur.*** . . .	plural.
pr.	proper.
prep.	preposition.
pres.	present.
pron.	pronoun.
refl.	reflexive.
rel.	relative.
sing.	singular.
subjv.	subjunctive.
subst.	substantive.
sup.	superlative.
tr.	transitive.

VOCABULARY

LATIN—ENGLISH

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*, from, by, with, at, on, in.

abditus. *See* abdō.

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus (ab + dō, place), *tr.*, put away, conceal.

abiciō, ere, abiēcī, abiectus, *tr.*, throw, hurl.

ablātus. *See* auferō.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.*, be away, be distant, be absent.

ac. *See* atque.

Acca, ae, *f.*, *pr. name*, Acca Larentia, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.

accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus (ad + cēdō), *intr.*, go near, come near, approach; *w.* ad *and acc.*

accendō, ere, accendī, accēnsus (ad + candeō, glow), *tr.*, set on fire; accēnsus, burning.

accidō, ere, accidī, — (ad + cadō), *intr.*, happen.

acciō, īre, accīvī, accītus (ad + cieō, set in motion), *tr.*, summon, invite.

accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus (ad + capiō), *tr.*, receive; suffer, undergo.

acclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + clāmō, cry), *tr.*, shout, cry out.

acclīvis, e (ad + clīvus, slope), rising.

acclīvitās, ātis (acclīvis), *f.*, ascent, slope.

accurrō, ere, accurrī, accursum (ad + currō, run), *intr.*, run up, hasten to.

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + causa), *tr.*, accuse, reproach.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, fierce.

ācerrimē. *See* ācriter.

aciēs, aciēī, *f*, edge; line of battle.

ācriter (ācer), *adv.*, sharply, eagerly, fiercely; *comp.* ācrius; *sup.* ācerrimē.

āctus. *See* agō.

ad, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward, at, near, against; according to; *w. numerals*, about.

addō, addere, addidī, additus (ad + dō, place), *tr.*, add.

addūcō, ere, addūxī, adductus (ad + dūcō), *tr.*, lead to, lead, influence.

adeō, adīre, adiī, aditum (ad + eō), *intr.*, go to, approach.

adficiō, ere, adfēcī, adfectus (ad + faciō), *tr.*, affect; poenā —, punish.

adhibeō, ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus (ad + habeō), *tr.*, call in, use.

aditus, ūs (adeō), *m.*, approach, access.

administrō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ad** + **ministrō**, manage), *tr.*, manage, direct, administer.

adolēscō, ere, adolēvī, adultus (**ad** + **olēscō**, grow), *intr.*, grow up.

adorior, īrī, adortus sum (**ad** + **orior**), *intr.*, attack.

adōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ad** + **ōrnō**, equip), *tr.*, equip, adorn.

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (**ad** + **sum**), *intr.*, be present, aid.

Aduatucī, ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

adulēscēns, entis (**adolēscō**), young; *as subst.*, young man, youth.

adveniō, īre, advēnī, adventum (**ad** + **veniō**), *intr.*, come to, arrive, reach.

adventus, ūs (**adveniō**), *m.*, arrival, approach.

adversus, a, um (**advertō**, turn to), in front, opposite; **adversō colle**, up the hill.

adversus (**adversus**), *prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against, facing.

aedificium, ī (**aedificō**), *n.*, building.

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus (**aedis** + **faciō**), *tr.*, build, construct.

aedis *or* **aedēs, is,** *f.*, temple; *pl.*, **aedēs rēgiae**, palace.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.

aegrē (**aeger**), *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.

aegritūdō, inis (**aeger**), *f.*, sickness, vexation, mortification.

aequāliter (**aequālis**, equal), *adv.*, uniformly, equally.

aequus, a, um, equal, favorable.

aestās, ātis, *f.*, summer.

aetās, ātis, *f.*, age.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, territory.

agger, aggeris (**ad** + **gerō**), *m.*, mound, agger.

aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum (**ad** + **gradior**, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.

agmen, agminis (**agō**), *n.*, army on the march; **prīmum agmen**, van; **novissimum agmen**, rear.

āgnōscō, ere, āgnōvī, āgnitus (**ad** + [**g**]**nōscō**, know), *tr.*, recognize.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *tr.*, drive, lead, move forward, do, treat; **triumphum agere**, celebrate a triumph.

agricola, ae (**ager** + **colō**), *m.*, farmer.

aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, *def.*, say.

Alba *or* **Alba Longa, ae,** *f.*, an ancient Latin town.

Albānus, a, um (**Alba**), Alban; *as subst.*, **Albānus, ī,** *m.*, an Alban.

albus, a, um, white.

aliēnus, a, um (**alius**), another's, unfavorable, strange.

aliquis *and* **aliquī, aliqua, aliquid** *and* **aliquod,** *indef. pron.*, some one, any one.

alius, alia, aliud, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . some, some . . . others; **aliī aliam in partem**, some in one direction, some in another.

Allobrogēs, um, *m.*, a Celtic tribe of Gaul.

alō, ere, aluī, altus, *tr.*, nourish, strengthen.

altāria, ium, *n. pl.*, altar.

alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*), another, second.

altitūdō, inis (**altus**), *f.*, height, depth.

altus, a, um (**alō**), high, deep.

alveus, ī, *m.*, basket, trough.

Ambiānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Belgian tribe.
amīcitia, ae (amīcus), *f.*, friendship, alliance.
amīcus, ī (amō), *m.*, friend, ally.
āmittō, ere, āmīsī, āmissus (ā + mittō), *tr.*, lose.
amō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, love, like.
āmoveō, ēre, āmōvī, āmōtus (ā + moveō), *tr.*, take away, remove.
amplificō, āre, āvī, ātus (amplus + faciō), *tr.*, increase, extend.
amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample.
Amūlius, ī, *m.*, king of Alba Longa.
ancīle, is, *n.*, a small oval shield.
angustiae, ārum (angustus), *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrow pass.
angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted; steep.
animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus (animum + advertō, turn toward), *tr.*, turn one's mind to, notice; **animadvertere in,** punish.
animal, ālis (anima, life), *n.*, animal.
animus, ī, *m.*, mind, disposition, courage, spirit; **in animō esse, in animō habēre,** have in mind, intend.
annus, ī, *m.*, year.
ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before.
antepōnō, ere, anteposuī, antepositus (ante + pōnō), *tr.*, put before.
antequam, *conj.*, before, until.
antīquitus (antīquus), *adv.*, in former times, anciently.
antīquus, a, um, old, ancient.
ānulus, ī, *m.*, ring.
anxius, a, um (angō, vex), troubled, anxious.
aperiō, īre, aperuī, apertus, *tr.*, open.
apertus, a, um (aperiō), open.
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, call, name.
Appius, ī, *m.*, a Roman surname.
apprehendō, ere, apprehendī, apprehēnsus (ad + prehendō, seize), *tr.*, lay hold of, seize.
appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātum (ad + propīnquus), *intr., w. dat.*, approach, come near.
apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, in the presence of, near.
aqua, ae, *f.*, water.
Aquilēia, ae, *f.*, a town of Cisalpine [Gaul.
aquilō, ōnis, *m.*, the north wind.
Aquītānia, ae, *f.*, a division of southern Gaul.
Aquītānus, ī, *m.*, an Aquitanian.
āra, ae, *f.*, altar.
Arar, Araris, *m.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.
arbiter, arbitrī, *m.*, witness.
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum (arbiter), *intr.*, think, consider, suppose.
arceō, ēre, arcuī, —, *tr.*, shut up, hinder, prevent.
Ariovistus, ī, *m.*, a German king.
arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.
armilla, ae, *f.*, bracelet.
armō, āre, āvī, ātus (arma), *tr.*, arm, equip.
arō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, plow.
ars, artis, *f.*, art.
artūs, artuum, *m. pl.*, joints.
arx, arcis (arceō), *f.*, stronghold, citadel.
asper, aspera, asperum, rough, fierce.
āstūtia, ae (āstūtus, cunning), *f.*, shrewdness, cunning.
asylum, ī, *n.*, asylum, place of refuge.
at, *conj.*, but, yet.
Athēnae, ārum, *f.*, Athens.
atque, ac, *conj.*, and.
Atrebās, ātis, *m.*, one of the Atrębates, a Belgic tribe.

attingō, ere, attigī, attāctus (**ad** + **tangō**, touch), *tr.*, touch, join, border on.

attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck, astounded.

auctōritās, ātis (**augeō**), *f.*, authority, influence, reputation.

audācter (**audāx**, bold), *adv.*, boldly, courageously; *comp.* **audācius**; *sup.* **audācissimē**.

Audecumborius, ī, *m.*, an ambassador of the Remi.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *intr.*, dare.

audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus, *tr.*, hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (**ab** + **ferō**), *tr.*, take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *tr.*, increase.

augurium, ī (**augur**, soothsayer), *n.*, divination, augury.

aureus, a, um (**aurum**, gold), golden.

auspicium, ī (**avis** + **speciō**, look), *n.*, divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. *See* **audeō**.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, however.

auxilium, ī, *n.*, help, aid.

Aventīnus, a, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

āvertō, ere, āvertī, āversus (**ab** + **vertō**), *tr.*, turn away, remove.

avis, is, *f.*, bird.

avus, ī, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, e, Balearic.

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgians, *a tribe of northern Gaul.*

bellicōsus, a, um (**bellum**), warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

bellum, ī, *n.*, war; **bellum īnferre**, make war; **bellum gerere**, wage war.

bene (**bonus**), *adv.*, well; *comp.* **melius**, *sup.* **optimē**.

beneficium, ī (**bene** + **faciō**), *n.*, favor, service.

benīgnē (**benīgnus**, kind), *adv.*, kindly.

bibō, ere, bibī, —, *tr.*, drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, *n.*, a town of the Remi.

Bōiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetiī.

bonus, a, um, good.

Bratuspantium, ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, e, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (**brevis**), *f.*, shortness.

Britannia, ae, *f.*, Britain.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *tr.*, fall, die, perish.

caedēs, is (**caedō**), *f.*, slaughter.

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus, *tr.*, cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, ī, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, *m.*, a family name of the Julian gens; **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, 100–44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

calamitās, ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat.

campus, ī, *m.*, plain.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *tr.*, take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, ī, *n.*, the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captīvus, ī (**capiō**), *m.*, captive.

caput, capitis, *n.*, head.

cārē (**cārus**), *adv.*, dearly.

careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *intr. w. abl.*, be without, be in need of, lack.

carpentum, ī, *n.*, two-wheeled carriage.
carrus, ī, *m.*, wagon, cart.
Carthāgō, inis, *f.*, a great Phoenician city on the northern coast of Africa.
cārus, a, um, dear.
casa, ae, *f.*, hut.
Cassius, ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
castellum, ī (*dim. of* **castrum**), *n.*, fort, redoubt.
Casticus, ī, *m.*, a Sequanian chief.
castrum, ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.* **castra, ōrum,** camp.
cāsus, ūs (**cadō**), *m.*, falling, chance, misfortune.
catulus, ī, *m.*, cub.
causa, ae, *f.*, reason, cause, case; **quā dē causā,** why, for this reason; **causā,** *w. gen.*, for the sake of, for, on account of.
cavea, ae (**cavus,** hollow), *f.*, cage.
cecidī. *See* **cadō.**
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go, yield, retire, retreat.
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.
celeritās, ātis (**celer**), *f.*, speed, quickness.
celeriter (**celer**), *adv.*, quickly, swiftly; *comp.* **celerius**; *sup.* **celerrimē.**
Celtae, ārum, *m.*, Celts, *one of the three great peoples of Gaul.*
cēna, ae, *f.*, meal, dinner.
centum, *indecl.*, hundred.
centuria, ae (**centum**), *f.*, a division of the people, or army, containing one hundred; century.
centuriō, ōnis (**centuria**), *m.*, centurion, commander of a century.
certāmen, inis (**certō,** contend), *n.*, contest.
certus, a, um (**cernō,** perceive), certain, appointed; **certiōrem facere,** inform.
cēterī, ae, a, *pl.*, the rest, the others.
cibus, ī, *m.*, food.
Cimbrī, ōrum, *m.*, a Germanic tribe.
circā, *prep. w. acc.*, around, about.
circiter, *prep. w. acc.*, about, nearly.
circum, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, about, around.
circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (**circum** + **dō**), *tr.*, surround.
circumiciō, ere, circumiēcī, circumiectus (**circum** + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw about, place around.
circumveniō, īre, circumvēnī, circumventus (**circum** + **veniō**), *tr.*, come around, surround.
cis, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.
citerior, citerius, hither.
citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.
cīvicus, a, um (**cīvis**), civic.
cīvis, is, *m. and f.*, citizen.
cīvitās, ātis (**cīvis**), *f.*, citizenship, state.
clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**clāmō,** cry out), *tr.*, cry out, shout.
clāmor, ōris (**clāmō,** cry out), *m.*, shouting, cry.
classis, is, *f.*, fleet.
Claudia, ae, *f.*, sister of Appius Claudius Pulcher.
Claudius, ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; **Appius Claudius Pulcher,** consul 249 B.C.
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *tr.*, shut, close.
clēmentia, ae (**clēmēns,** mild), *f.*, kindness, mildness.
cliēns, clientis, *m. and f.*, dependent, vassal.
coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum, *def.*, began.

cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus (con + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize, learn, discover, ascertain.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus (con + agō), drive together, collect, force, compel.

cohors, cohortis, *f.*, cohort (the tenth part of a legion).

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum (con + hortor), *tr.*, exhort, encourage.

collis, is, *m.*, hill.

colō, ere, coluī, cultus, *tr.*, cultivate, worship.

commeātus, ūs, *m.*, provisions, supplies.

comminus (con + manus), *adv.*, hand to hand.

committō, ere, commīsī, commissus (con + mittō), *tr.*, commit, intrust; join, begin (battle).

commodē (commodus, useful), *adv.*, advantageously, easily.

commoveō, ēre, commōvī, commōtus (con + moveō), *tr.*, to move, influence, disturb.

compār, comparis (con + pār), fitting, suitable.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + parō), *tr.*, prepare, provide.

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus (con + pleō, fill), *tr.*, fill up, complete.

complūrēs, ia, many, very many, a great many.

comprehendō, ere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus (con + prehendō, seize), *tr.*, seize, arrest.

con. *See* **cum.**

concēdō, ere, concessī, concessum (con + cēdō), *intr.*, yield, grant, allow, permit.

concidō, ere, concidī, — (con + cadō), *intr.*, fall, be killed.

concīdō, ere, concīdī, concīsus (con + caedō, slay), *tr.*, cut down, kill.

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, gain, win, procure.

concilium, ī, *n.*, assembly, council.

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + damnō), *tr.*, condemn.

condiciō, ōnis (condīcō, agree), *f.*, agreement, proposal, terms.

condō, ere, condidī, conditus (con + dō, put), *tr.*, found, establish.

condūcō, ere, condūxī, conductus (con + dūcō), *tr.*, bring together, hire.

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (con + ferō), *tr.*, bring together, gather; **sē cōnferre,** betake one's self, go.

cōnfertus, a, um (cōnferciō, crowd), crowded, dense.

cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (con + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete, furnish, wear out.

cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + fīrmō, strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen, establish, assure, declare, encourage.

cōnflīgō, ere, cōnflīxī, cōnflīctum, *intr.*, contend, fight.

cōnfugiō, ere, cōnfūgī, —, *intr.*, flee.

congressus, ūs (congredior, meet), *m.*, meeting.

congruō, ere, congruī, —, *intr.*, agree, tally.

coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus (con + iaciō), *tr.*, throw, hurl.

coniungō, ere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus (con + iungō), *tr.*, join.

coniūnx, coniugis (coniungō), *f.*, wife.

coniūrātiō, ōnis (coniūrō), *f.*, conspiracy.

coniūrātus, ī (coniūrō), *m.*, conspirator.

coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.

conlātus. *See* **cōnferō.**

conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + locō, place), *tr.*, place, put, station.

conloquium, ī (conloquor), *n.*, interview, conference.

conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, attempt, try.

cōnsanguineus, ī (con + sanguis, blood), *m.*, relative, kinsman.

cōnscrībō, ere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus (con + scrībō), *tr.*, levy, enroll.

cōnsecrō, āre, avī, ātus (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate.

cōnsentiō, īre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsum (con + sentiō, feel), *intr.*, agree, conspire.

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum (con + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.

cōnserō, ere, cōnseruī, cōnsertus (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + servō), *tr.*, keep safe, preserve.

cōnsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, consider, examine, look at closely.

cōnsīdō, ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum (con + sīdō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.

cōnsilium, ī (cōnsulō), *n.*, plan, advice, prudence.

cōnsimilis, e (con + similis), very like.

cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, — (con + sistō, place), *intr.*, take a stand, hold a position, stop.

cōnspectus, ūs (cōnspiciō), *m.*, sight, view.

cōnspiciō, ere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus (con + speciō, look), *tr.*, see, perceive.

cōnstantia, ae (cōnstō, stand), *f.*, firmness.

cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.

cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, be accustomed.

cōnsuētūdō, inis (cōnsuēscō), *f.*, custom, habit.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*, consul.

cōnsulō, ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, *tr.*, ask advice, consult.

contendō, ere, contendī, contentum (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.

contentiō, ōnis (contendō), *f.*, contest, controversy.

continenter (continēō), *adv.*, continually, constantly.

continēō, ēre, continuī, contentus (con + tenēō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, hem in, keep.

cōntiō, ōnis (conveniō), *f.*, meeting.

contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against, opposite.

contulī. *See* **cōnferō.**

cōnūbium, ī (con + nūbō, marry), *f.*, marriage.

conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventum (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers.* **convenit**, it is fit, agreed.

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus (con + vertō), *tr.*, turn (about), change; **sīgna convertere**, face about.

convocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + vocō), *tr.*, call together, summon.

coorior, īrī, coortus sum (con + orior), *intr.*, rise, break out.

cōpia, ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.

Corinthus, ī, *f.*, Corinth.

Cornēlius, ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman family. *See* **Cossus**.

cornū, ūs, *n.*, horn, flank, wing.

corōna, ae, *f.*, crown.

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.

corruō, ere, corruī, — (con + ruō, fall), *intr.*, fall, be slain.

Cossus, ī, *m.*, **Aulus Cornēlius Cossus**, consul 343 B.C.

cottīdiānus, a, um (cottīdiē), daily.

cottīdiē, *adv.*, daily.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *tr. and intr., w. dat.*, believe, trust.

cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, burn.

creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, appoint, choose.

Crētēs, Crētum, *m. pl.*, Cretans.

crux, crucis, *f.*, cross, gallows.

culpō, āre, āvī, ātus (**culpa**, fault), *tr.*, blame.

cultus, *see* **colō**.

cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with; *in composition*, con-, co-; *conj.*, when, since, although, because.

cupidus, a, um (cupiō), desirous, eager.

cupiō, ere, cupīvī *or* **cupiī, cupītus**, *tr.*, wish, desire, be eager for.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, ae, *f.*, care.

Curēs, Curium, *f. pl.*, a Sabine town.

cūria, ae, *f.*, senate.

cursus, ūs (currō, run), *m.*, course.

curūlis, e (currus, chariot), curule.

cūstōdia, ae (cūstōs, guard), *f.*, guard.

cūstōdiō, īre, cūstōdīvī, cūstōdītus (cūstōs, guard), *tr.*, watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ōnis (damnō), *f.*, condemnation.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, condemn, sentence.

dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from; concerning, in regard to, for; about.

dea, ae, *f.*, goddess.

dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (dē + habeō), *tr.*, owe; *with inf.*, ought.

decem, *indecl.*, ten.

dēcernō, ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus (dē + cernō, separate), *tr.*, decide, decree.

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum (dē + certō, contend), *intr.*, fight, contend.

Decius, ī, *m.*, **Pūblius Decius Mūs**, consul 340 B.C.

dēclīvis, e (dē + clīvus, slope), sloping.

dēcrēvī. *See* **dēcernō**.

dēcurrō, ere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum (dē + currō, run), *intr.*, run down, hasten down.

dēditiō, ōnis (dēdō), *f.*, surrender.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē + dō), *tr.*, give up, surrender.

dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *tr.*, defend, protect.

dēfēnsor, ōris (dēfendō), *m.*, defender.

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus (dē + ferō), *tr.*, carry off; bestow, confer.

dēficiō, ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus (dē + faciō), *tr. and intr.*, fail, be lacking; revolt.

deinceps, *adv.*, successively, next, [thereafter.

deinde (dē + inde), *adv.*, afterwards, next.

dēlābor, dēlābī, dēlāpsus sum (dē + lābor, slip), *intr.*, glide *or* fall down.

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, please, delight.

dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus (dē + legō, collect), *tr.*, select, choose.

Delphī, ōrum, *m.*, Delphi.

dēmittō, ere, dēmīsī, dēmissus (dē + mittō), *tr.*, send down, let down; **sē dēmittere**, jump.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus (dē + mōnstrō, show), *tr.*, point out, show, mention.

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally.

dēpōnō, ere, dēposuī, dēpositus (dē + pōnō), *tr.*, lay down, give up.

dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum (dē + populor), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, ōris (dēprecor, mediate), *m.*, intercessor; **eō dēprecātōre**, through his mediation.

dēscendō, ere, dēscendī, dēscēnsum (dē + scandō, climb), *intr.*, descend.

dēscrībō, ere, dēscrīpsī, dēscrīptus (dē + scrībō), *tr.*, describe.

dēsistō, ere, dēstitī, — (dē + sīstō, stand), *intr.*, cease, leave off.

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus (dē + sum), *intr.*, be lacking, fail.

deus, ī, *m.*, god.

dēvincō, ere, dēvīcī, dēvictus (dē + vincō), *tr.*, subdue, conquer.

dēvoveō, ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus (dē + voveō), *tr.*, vow, devote.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right; **dextra, ae**, *f.*, right hand.

dī-. *See* **dis-**.

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *tr.*, say, tell, speak; impose (a fine).

diēs, ēī, *m. and f.*, day.

difficilis, e (dis + facilis), difficult, hard.

difficultās, ātis (difficilis), *f.*, difficulty.

dīligenter (dīligō, esteem). *adv.*, carefully, attentively.

dīligentia, ae (dīligō, esteem), *f.*, carefulness, diligence, industry.

dīmētior, īrī, dīmēnsus sum, *tr.*, measure.

dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, fight, contend.

dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus (dis + mittō), *tr.*, send off, dismiss, let go.

dīripiō, ere, dīripuī, dīreptus (dis + rapiō), *tr.*, lay waste, pillage, ravage.

dis-, dī-, *insep. neg. prefix*, apart, not, un-.

discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum (dis + cēdō), *intr.*, depart, withdraw, leave.

discipulus, ī (discō), *m.*, pupil.

discō, ere, didicī, —, *tr.*, learn.

discurrō, ere, dis(cu)currī, discursum (dis + currō, run), *intr.*, run in different directions.

dissimilis, e (dis + similis), unlike, dissimilar.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus (dissimilis), *tr.*, conceal, disguise.

distineō, ēre, distinuī, distentus (dis + teneō), *tr.*, keep apart.

distribuō, ere, distribuī, distribūtus (dis + tribuō, assign), *tr.*, distribute, divide.

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time; *comp.* **diūtius**, *sup.* **diūtissimē**.

Dīviciācus, ī, *m.*, a chief of the Haedui.

dīvidō, ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *tr.*, divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *tr.*, give; **poenās dare,** suffer punishment.

doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, *tr.*, teach, inform.

dolōsē (**dolus,** trick), *adv.*, craftily, by trickery.

domesticus, a, um (**domus**), domestic; from their own country.

dominus, ī, *m.*, master, lord.

domus, ūs *or* **ī,** *f.*, house, home; **domī,** at home; **domum,** (to) home, homeward.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**dōnum**), *tr.*, present, give.

dōnum, ī (**dō**), *n.*, gift.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

ducentī, ae, a (**duo** + **centum**), two hundred.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *tr.*, lead, bring.

Duīlius, ī, *m.*, **Gāius Duīlius,** a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.

dum, *conj.*, while, until.

Dumnorīx, īgis, *m.*, brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, *indecl.*, twelve.

duodēvīgintī, *indecl.*, eighteen.

dux, ducis (**dūcō**), *m.*, guide, leader, general.

E

ē. *See* **ex.**

ēditus, a, um (**ēdō**), high, elevated.

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus (**ex** + **dō**), *tr.*, give out, give birth to, bear.

edō, edere *or* **ēsse, ēdī, ēsus,** *tr.*, eat.

ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus (**ex** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead out, lead.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus (**ex** + **ferō**), *tr.*, carry out.

effugiō, ere, effūgī, — (**ex** + **fugiō**), *tr. and intr.*, escape.

effundō, ere, effūdī, effūsus (**ex** + **fundō**, pour), *tr.*, pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Egeria, ae, *f.*, a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgī. *See* **agō.**

ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.

eius. *See* **is.**

ēliciō, ere, ēlicuī, ēlicitus (**ex** + **laciō**, allure), *tr.*, lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (**ex** + **legō**, choose), *tr.*, select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum (**ex** + **migrō**, migrate), *intr.*, emigrate, remove.

enim, *conj.*, for.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex** + **nūntiō**), *tr.*, announce, reveal.

eō, īre, iī, itum, *intr.*, go.

eō (**is**), *adv.*, there, to that place, thither.

eques, equitis (**equus**), *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry, cavalrymen.

equester, equestris, equestre (**eques**), of the cavalry, equestrian.

equitātus, ūs (**eques**), *m.*, cavalry.

equus, ī, *m.*, horse.

ēripiō, ere, ēripuī, ēreptus (**ex** + **rapiō**), *tr.*, snatch away, save.

erō, eris, etc. *See* **sum.**

ēruptiō, ōnis (**ērumpō,** break forth), *f.*, breaking out, sally.

esse. *See* **sum.**

ēsse. *See* **edō.**

et, *conj.*, and; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.

etiam (**et** + **iam**), *conj.*, besides, still, even.

Eurōpa, ae, *f.*, Europe.

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum (**ex** + **vādō**, go), *intr.*, go out, escape.

ex *or* **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, of; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side; **ex itinere**, on the march.

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + cōgitō, think), *tr.*, think out, contrive.

exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus (ex + eō), *intr.*, go out, depart, leave.

exercitō, āre, āvī, ātus (exerceō, train), *tr.*, exercise, train.

exercitus, ūs (exerceō, train), *m.*, army.

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + aestimō, consider), *tr.*, think, suppose, believe.

expedītus, a, um (expediō, free), unincumbered, without baggage.

expellō, ere, expulī, expulsus (ex + pellō) *tr.*, drive out, expel.

explōrātor, ōris (explōrō), *m.*, scout.

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, search, ascertain, reconnoiter.

expōnō, ere, exposuī, expositus (ex + pōnō), *tr.*, expose, abandon.

expositiō, ōnis (expōnō), *f.*, exposure, abandonment.

expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + pugnō), *tr.*, capture, take by storm, storm.

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + spectō), *tr.*, look, wait for, await, expect, wait to see.

exstinguō, ere, exstīnxī, exstīnctus (ex + stinguō, put out), *tr.*, extinguish, destroy, kill.

exterus, extera, exterum, outer; *comp.* **exterior**, *sup.* **extrēmus**, last, end of.

extrā, *prep. w. acc.*, outside of, beyond.

extrēmus. *See* **exterus.**

F

faber, fabrī, *m.*, mechanic, workman, artisan.

fabricō, āre, āvī, ātus (faber), *tr.*, make, construct, build.

fābula, ae (for, speak), *f.*, story.

facile (facilis), *adv.*, easily; *comp.* **facilius**, *sup.* **facillimē.**

facilis, e (faciō), easy.

faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *tr.*, make, do, form, build; **verba facere**, speak; **proelium facere**, fight a battle.

factum, ī (faciō), *n.*, deed.

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, *tr.*, deceive; **spem sē fefellisse**, that they were disappointed in their hope.

familia, ae (famulus, slave), *f.*, household, vassals.

fāstus, a, um (fās, right), legal, court—.

Faustulus, ī, *m.*, the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.

fefellī. *See* **fallō.**

fēmina, ae, *f.*, woman.

ferāx, ferācis (ferō), fertile, productive.

ferē, *adv.*, nearly, about, almost.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*, bear, carry; **lēgem ferre**, propose, institute a law.

ferreus, a, um (ferrum, iron), (of) iron; **ferreae manūs**, grappling-irons.

fertilitās, ātis (**fertilis**, fertile), *f.*, fertility.

ferus, a, um, fierce, wild, barbarous.

fidēs, eī (fīdō, trust), *f.*, faith, confidence, trust; **in fidem venīre**, put one's self under the protection of.

fīdus, a, um, faithful, loyal.

fīlia, ae, *f.*, daughter.

fīlius, ī, *m.*, son.

fīnis, is, *m.*, limit, end, boundary; *pl.*, territory.

fīnitimus, a, um (fīnis), adjoining, neighboring; *as subst.*, **fīnitimus, ī**, *m.*, neighbor.

fīō, fierī, factus sum (*used as passive of* **faciō**), be made, become; **certior fierī**, be informed.

flāmen, flāminis, *m.*, Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

flūmen, flūminis (**fluō**), *n.*, river.

fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxus, *intr.*, flow.

foculus, ī (*dim. of* **focus**, hearth), *m.*, fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, *m.*, fountain, spring.

fore = **futūrum esse**.

foret = **esset**.

fōrma, ae, *f.*, shape, form.

fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effūsus**, happened to have overflowed.

fortis, e, brave.

fortiter (**fortis**), *adv.*, bravely.

fortūna, ae (**fors**), *f.*, fortune, good fortune.

forum, ī, *n.*, market place, forum.

fossa, ae (**fodiō**, dig), *f.*, ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother.

frūmentārius, a, um (**frūmentum**), of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.

frūmentum, ī (**fruor**), *n.*, grain.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr., w. abl.*, enjoy.

fuga, ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight.

fugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *intr.*, flee, run away.

fulmen, inis (**fulgeō**, flash), *n.*, thunderbolt, lightning.

fūmus, ī, *m.*, smoke.

fūnāle, is (**fūnis**, cord), *n.*, torch.

funditor, ōris (**funda**, sling), *m.*, slinger.

furor, ōris (**furō**, rage), *m.*, rage, madness.

fūrtum, ī (**fūr**, thief), *n.*, theft.

futūrus. *See* **sum**.

G

G. = **Gāius, ī**, *m.*, a Roman name.

Galba, ae, *m.*: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Suessiones.

Gallia, ae, *f.*, Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, Gallic; *as subst.*, **Gallus, ī**, *m.*, a Gaul.

Garumna, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.

Gaurus, ī, *m.*, a mountain of Campania.

geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; *as subst.*, **geminī, ōrum**, *m. pl.*, twins.

Genāva, ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.

gēns, gentis (**gignō**, bear), *f.*, tribe, nation, race.

genus, generis (**gēns**), *n.*, kind, class, species.

Germānus, ī, *m.*, German.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *tr.*, bear, carry, carry on, wage; *pass.*, go on, take place; **mātrem sē gessit**, bore herself *or* acted as a mother.

gladius, ī, *m.*, sword.

gracilis, e, slender.

Graecia, ae, *f.*, Greece.

Graecus, ī, *m.*, Greek.

grātia, ae (**grātus**), *f.*, favor, influence; kindness; **grātiā**, *w. gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum (**grātus**), *tr.*, congratulate.

grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

gravis, e, heavy, hard.

graviter (**gravis**), *adv.*, severely.

H

habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, *tr.*, have, hold; consult (**auspicia**).

Haeduus, ī, *m.*, Haeduan.

Hannibal, alis, *m.*: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247–183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.

hasta, ae, *f.*, spear.

haud, *adv.*, not.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; *as subst.*, **Helvētiī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, Helvetians.

hīberna, ōrum (hiems), *n. pl.*, winter quarters.

hīc, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this; the latter; he, she, it.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum (hiems), *intr.*, winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.

hinc (hīc), *adv.*, hence; **hinc . . . hinc,** in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.

Hispānia, ae, *f.*, Spain.

hodiē (hīc + diēs), *adv.*, to-day.

homō, hominis, *m. and f.*, man, human being.

honor, ōris, *m.*, honor.

hōra, ae, *f.*, hour.

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, urge, encourage.

hortus, ī, *m.*, garden.

hospes, hospitis, *m. and f.*, guest, host.

Hostīlius, ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman family; **Hostus Hostīlius,** a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostīlius,** third king of Rome.

hostis, is, *m.*, enemy.

Hostus. See **Hostīlius.**

hūc (hīc), *adv.*, hither, to this place.

humilis, e (humus), low.

humus, ī, *f.*, ground; **humī,** on the ground.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, *tr.*, throw, hurl; construct (**aggerem**).

iactitō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), *intr.*, boast, brag.

iam, *adv.*, now, already, soon.

Iānīculum, ī, *m.*, one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

Iānuārius, ī (Iānus), *m.*, January.

Iānus, ī, *m.*, Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, *m.*, one of the Remi.

īdem, eadem, idem (is + dem), *dem. pron. and adj.*, the same.

identidem, *adv.*, again and again.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

Īdūs, Īduum, *f. pl.*, the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

ignis, is, *m.*, fire.

īgnōminia, ae, *f.*, dishonor, disgrace.

īgnōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (īgnārus, ignorant), *tr.*, not to know.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron. and adj.*, that; he, she, it; the former.

imāgō, inis, *f.*, likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in *neg.* **+ bellum),** unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbuī, imbūtus, *tr.*, wet; inspire.

immineō, ēre, imminuī, —, *intr.*, overhang.

immittō, ere, immīsī, immissus (in + mittō), *tr.*, send into, let into, hurl.

impedīmentum, ī (impediō), *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus (in + pēs), *tr.*, entangle, hinder, impede.

impellō, ere, impulī, impulsus (in + pellō), *tr.*, urge, impel, incite.

impendeō, ēre, —, — (in + pendeō, hang), *intr.*, overhang.

imperātor, ōris (imperō), *m.*, commander, commander in chief, general.

imperātum, ī (imperō), *n.*, order, command.

imperium, ī (imperō), *n.*, order, command, power, government, rule; **nova imperia**, revolution.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum (in + parō), *intr., w. dat.*, command, order, rule.

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, obtain, secure, gain.

impetus, ūs (impetō, attack), *m.*, assault, attack, onset.

impius, a, um (in *neg.* + pius, reverent), wicked, impious.

impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus (in + pōnō), *tr.*, place in.

imprōvīsus, a, um (in *neg.* + prōvīsus, foreseen), sudden; **dē imprōvīsō**, unexpectedly, suddenly.

īmus. *See* **īnferus.**

in-, *negative inseparable prefix*, un-, not.

in, *prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.*, into, against, toward, forward; *w. abl.*, in, on, upon, over.

incendō, ere, incendī, incēnsus (in + candeō, glow), *tr.*, set fire to, burn.

incidō, ere, incidī, — (in + cadō), *intr.*, occur.

incitō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + citō, move swiftly), *tr.*, urge on, incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.

inclīnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr. and intr.*, bend, incline, yield.

inclutus, a, um, famous.

incola, ae (incolō), *m.* and *f.*, inhabitant.

incolō, ere, incoluī, —, *tr.*, dwell, live.

incolumis, e, unharmed, safe.

incrēdibilis, e (in *neg.* + crēdibilis, believable), incredible.

increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus (increpō), *tr.*, exclaim, upbraid, taunt.

increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus, *tr.*, sound, scold, exclaim.

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + causa), *tr.*, accuse, blame.

inde, *adv.*, thence, thereupon, then.

index, indicis (indicō), *m.*, sign, mark.

indicium, ī (indicō), *n.*, information; **per indicium**, by informers.

indicō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + dicō, declare), *tr.*, announce, reveal.

indīcō, ere, indīxī, indictus (in + dīcō), *tr.*, proclaim, announce, appoint.

īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (in *neg.* + fēlīx, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.

īnferior. *See* **īnferus.**

īnfero, īnferre, intulī, inlātus (in + ferō), *tr.*, carry in, bring in; **sē īnferre**, betake one's self; **sīgna īnferre**, charge.

īnferus, a, um, below; *comp.* **īnferior**, lower, inferior; *sup.* **īnfimus** *or* **īmus**, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.

īnfestō, āre, āvī, ātus (**īnfestus**), *tr.*, annoy.

īnfestus, a, um, hostile.

īnfimus. *See* **īnferus.**

īnfluō, ere, īnflūxī, īnfluxum (in + fluō), *intr.*, flow into, empty into.

ingēns, ingentis, huge, vast.

ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum (in + gradior, go), *intr.*, go into, enter.

iniciō, ere, iniēcī, iniectus (in + iaciō), *tr.*, put in.

inimīcus, a, um (in *neg.* + amīcus), hostile.

inīquus, a, um (in *neg.* + aequus), unfavorable, disadvantageous.

initium, ī (ineō, begin), *n.*, beginning.

iniūria, ae, *f.*, injury, violence.

inopia, ae (inops, without means), *f.*, want, lack.

inquam, *def.*, say; **inquit**, said he.

inrīdeō, ēre, inrīsī, inrīsus (in + rīdeō, laugh), *tr.*, laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

īnsānus, a, um (in *neg.* + sānus, sound), mad.

īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum (in + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

īnsideō, ēre, īnsēdī, īnsessus (in + sedeō), *tr.*, occupy.

īnsidiae, ārum (īnsideō), *f. pl.*, ambush, treachery.

īnsidior, ārī, ātus sum (īnsidiae), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, lie in wait for, ambush.

īnsīgnis, e (sīgnum), remarkable, distinguished.

īnsiliō, īre, īnsiluī, īnsultus (in + saliō, leap), *tr.*, leap on.

īnstar, *n. indecl.*, likeness; **īnstar mūrī**, like a wall.

īnstituō, ere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus (in + statuō), *tr.*, form, establish.

īnstitūtum, ī (īnstituō), *n.*, purpose, custom, institution.

īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus (in + struō, build), *tr.*, arrange, draw up, form.

īnsula, ae, *f.*, island.

īnsum, inesse, īnfuī, īnfutūrus (in + sum), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be in, be among.

intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus (inter + legō), *tr.*, learn, perceive, know.

intempestus, a, um (in *neg.* + tempus), stormy.

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among, during; **dare inter sē**, exchange; **cohortātī inter sē**, encouraging one another.

intercēdō, ere, intercessī, intercessum (inter + cēdō), *intr.*, lie between, intervene.

intereā (inter + is), *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile.

interficiō, ere, interfēcī, interfectus (inter + faciō), *tr.*, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interior, interius (inter), inner, interior of; *sup.* **intimus.**

interscindō, ere, interscidī, interscissus (inter + scindō, break down), *tr.*, cut down, destroy.

intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus (inter + sum), *intr.*, be among, be present.

intimus. *See* **interior.**

intrā (inter), *prep. w. acc.*, in, during.

intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, enter.

intrōdūcō, ere, intrōdūxī, intrōductus (intrō, within + dūcō), *tr.*, lead in.

intrōrsus (intrō, within + versus), *adv.*, inside, within.

intulī. *See* **īnferō.**

inūtilis, e (in *neg.* + ūtilis), useless.

inveniō, īre, invēnī, inventus (in + veniō), *tr. and intr.*, come upon, find.

inveterāscō, ere, inveterāvī, — (in + veterāscō, grow old), *intr.*, become established.

invictus, a, um (in *neg.* + **vincō**), unconquered.

invītus, a, um, unwilling.

Iovi. *See* **Iuppiter.**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *determ. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; very; even.

īrātus, a, um (**īrāscor**, be angry), angered, in anger.

is, ea, id, *determ. pron. and adj.*, he, she, it; this, that; **is quī**, he (one, a man) who.

iste, ista, istud, *determ. pron. and adj.*, that (of yours).

ita (**is**), *adv.*, thus, so.

Ītalia, ae, *f*, Italy.

itaque (**is**), *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.

item (**is**), *adv.*, likewise, also.

iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, march; road, way, right of way; **iter facere**, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

itum, ītūrus. *See* **eō.**

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *tr.*, *w. inf.*, order, bid, command.

iūdicium, ī (**iūdex**, judge), *n.*, judgment, trial.

iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus (**iūdex**, judge), *tr.*, judge.

iugum, ī (**iungō**), *n.*, yoke; **sub iugum mittere**, send under the yoke (*made of spears crossed, in token of complete surrender*).

iūmentum, ī (**iungō**), *n.*, pack animal

iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *tr.*, join, fasten together.

iūnior, *comp. of* **iuvenis.**

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, ae, *f.*, the Jura Mountains, reaching from the Rhine to the Rhone.

iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī (**iūs**, law + **iūrō**, swear), *n.*, oath.

iūstitia, ae (**iūstus**, just), *f.*, justice, uprightness.

iuvenis, e, young; *comp.* **iūnior**; *as subst.* **iuvenis, is**, *m.*, young man, youth.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *tr.*, help, aid.

L

Labiēnus, ī, *m.*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, ōris, *m.*, labor, work.

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus (**labor**), *intr.*, work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.

lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *tr.*, attack, harass.

lacus, ūs, *m.*, lake.

laetus, a, um, glad.

laevus, a, um, left.

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

largītiō, ōnis (**largior**, lavish), *f.*, liberality; bribery.

lateō, ēre, latuī, —, *intr.*, be concealed, lie hid.

Latīnus, a, um, Latin.

lātitūdō, inis (**lātus**), *f.*, width, breadth.

Latobrīgī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii.

latrō, ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide.

lātus. *See* **ferō.**

latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank.

laudō, āre, āvī, ātus (laus, praise), *tr.*, praise, commend.

lēgātiō, ōnis (legō, commission), *f.*, embassy, deputation.

lēgātus, ī (legō, commission), *m.*, ambassador, envoy; lieutenant.

legiō, ōnis (legō), *f.*, legion.

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *tr.*, choose.

Lemannus, ī, lacus Lemannus, Lake of Geneva.

lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.

levitās, ātis (levis, light), *f.*, lightness, fickleness.

lēx, lēgis (legō), *f.*, law; **lēgem ferre,** propose, establish a law.

liber, librī, *m.*, book.

līber, lībera, līberum, free; *as subst.* **līberī, ōrum,** *m. pl.*, children.

līberō, āre, āvī, ātus (līber), *tr.*, liberate, free.

lībertās, ātis (līber), *f.*, freedom, liberty.

licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is allowed, permitted.

līneāmentum, ī (līnea, line), *m.*, feature.

littera, ae (linō, smear), *f.*, letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letters (epistles), documents.

locus, ī, *m.*; *pl.*, **locī** *and* **loca,** place, position.

longē (longus), *adv.*, far, far off.

longus, a, um, long, distant.

lūcus, ī, *m.*, grove.

lūdibrium, ī (lūdus), *n.*, jest, mockery.

lūdicer, lūdicra, lūdicrum (lūdus), sportive, playful.

lūdus, ī, *m.*, play, sport, game.

lūna, ae, *f.*, moon.

lupa, ae, *f.*, she-wolf.

lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, purify; review, inspect.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak.

lūxuria, ae, *f.*, excess, luxury.

M

māchina, ae, *f.*, engine, contrivance.

magis (*comp. of* multum), *adv.*, more, rather.

magister, magistrī, *m.*, master, teacher.

magistrātus, ūs (magister), *m.*, magistrate, officer.

magnitūdō, inis (magnus), *f.*, size, greatness.

magnopere (magnus + opus), *adv.*, very greatly.

magnus, a, um, large, great; *comp.* **maior,** *sup.* **maximus;** **maior nātū,** older; **maximus nātū,** oldest.

maior. *See* **magnus.**

male (malus), *adv.*, badly; *comp.* **peius,** *sup.* **pessimē.**

mālō, mālle, māluī (magis + volō), *tr. and intr.*, be more willing, prefer.

malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.* **peior,** *sup.* **pessimus.**

Māmurius, ī, *m.*, a Roman smith in the time of Numa.

mandātum, ī (mandō), *n.*, order, command.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, order, command.

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intr.*, remain, stay.

Mānēs, ium, *m. pl.*, the Manes, shades of the dead.

Mānlius, ī, *m.*, **Titus Mānlius Torquātus,** consul 343 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, inis (mānsuētus, tame), *f.*, mildness, clemency.

manus, ūs, *f.*, hand, band; **manūs ferreae,** grappling irons.

Mārcus, ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

mare, maris, *n.*, sea; **marī,** by sea.

maritimus, a, um (mare), of the sea, maritime.

Mārs, Martis, *m.*, Mars, the Roman god of war.

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother; **mātrem sē gessit,** bore herself, acted like, a mother.

mātrimōnium, ī (māter), *n.*, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, hasten, hurry.

maximē (maximus), *adv.*, very greatly, especially.

maximus. *See* **magnus.**

Maximus, ī, *m.*, a Roman cognomen. *See* **Valerius.**

mē, meī. *See* **ego.**

medius, a, um, middle; **per mediōs cūstōdēs,** through the midst of the guards; **quem medium,** the middle of which.

melior. *See* **bonus.**

melius. *See* **bene.**

memoria, ae, *f.*, memory.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind.

mēnsa, ae, *f.*, table.

mēnsis, is, *m.*, month.

mercātor, ōris (mercor, trade), *m.*, trader, merchant.

Mercurius, ī, *m.*, Mercury, god of trade, and messenger of the gods.

mergō, ere, mersī, mersus, *tr.*, dip, sink.

metus, ūs, *m.*, fear, terror.

meus, a, um, *poss. adj.*, my, mine.

mihi. *See* **ego.**

mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.

mīlitāris, e (mīles), military.

mīlle, *indecl. adj. and noun,* thousand; *pl.* **mīllia,** *always noun;* **mīlle passūs, mīlle passuum,** a Roman mile.

minimē (minimus). *See* **parum.**

minimus, a, um (*used as sup. of* **parvus**), smallest, least.

minor, minus (*see* **parvus**), smaller, less; **minor nātū,** younger.

minus (*used as comp. of* **parum**), *adv.*, less; **nihilō minus,** nevertheless; **sī minus,** if not.

mīrābilis, e (mīror, wonder), wonderful.

mīrāculum, ī (mīror, wonder), *n.*, wonder, prodigy.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful, surprising.

miser, misera, miserum, wretched, poor.

miserē (miser), *adv.*, wretchedly.

mītigō, āre, āvī, ātus (mītis, mild + **agō**), *tr.*, soften, civilize.

mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *tr.*, send, hurl.

mōbilitās, ātis (mōbilis, changeable), *f.*, fickleness.

moenia, moenium, *n. pl.*, walls, fortifications.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, *tr.*, warn, advise.

monitus, ūs (moneō), *m.*, warning, counsel, suggestion.

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.

mora, ae, *f.*, delay.

morbus, ī, *m.*, sickness, illness; **morbō exstīnctus,** died a natural death.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.*, die.

moror, ārī, ātus sum (mora), *intr.*, delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, habit.
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *tr.*, move, influence; **castra movēre,** break up camp.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
Mūcius, ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman family; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola,** a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.
Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius), Mucian.
mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman, wife.
multa, ae, *f.*, fine, penalty.
multitūdō, inis (multus), *f.*, numbers, multitude.
multō (*abl. of* **multus**), *adv.*, much.
multum (multus), *adv.*, much, greatly.
multus, a, um, much; *pl.*, many; **multā nocte,** late at night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night.
Mūnātius, ī, *m.*, **Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus,** one of Caesar's lieutenants.
mūnīmentum, ī (mūniō), *n.*, defense, fortification.
mūniō, īre, mūnīvī *or* **mūniī, mūnītus,** *tr.*, fortify, defend.
mūnītiō, ōnis (mūniō), *f.*, fortification.
mūnus, eris, *n.*, gift, reward.
mūrus, ī, *m.*, wall.

N

nactus. *See* **nancīscor.**
nam, *conj.*, for.
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born, be produced; rise.
nātiō, ōnis (nāscor), *f.*, nation, tribe, people.
nātū (nāscor), in age; **maior nātū,** older; **minor nātū,** younger.
nātūra, ae (nāscor), *f.*, nature, character.
nauta, ae (nāvis), *m.*, sailor.
nāvālis, e (nāvis), of ships, naval.
nāvis, is, *f.*, ship.
-ne, *enclitic*, sign of an interrogative.
nē, *conj.*, not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that.
necō, āre, āvī, ātus (nex) *tr.*, kill, put to death.
nefāstus, a, um (nefās, crime), unhallowed; unpropitious; **diēs nefāstus,** a day on which public business could not be transacted.
negō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr. and intr.*, deny, say . . . not.
negōtium, ī, *n.*, business, affair; **quicquam negōtī,** any trouble.
nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), *m. and f.*, no one, nobody.
nemus, nemoris, *n.*, grove.
nepōs, nepōtis, *m.*, grandson, descendant.
neque, nec, *conj.*, and not, but not; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
Nerviī, ōrum, *m.*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.
neuter, neutra, neutrum (nē + uter), neither (of two).
nex, necis, *f.*, death, murder.
niger, nigra, nigrum, black.
nihil, *indecl. n.*, nothing.
nihilō, *adv.*, in no respect; **nihilō minus,** nevertheless.
nisi (nē + sī), *conj.*, if not, unless, except.
nōbilis, e (nōsco, know), noble.
nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis), *f.*, nobility, nobles.

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *intr., w. dat.*, hurt, injure, harm.

nocturnus, a, um (nox), by night, in the night.

nōlo, nōlle, nōluī (nē + volō), *tr. and intr.*, not to wish, be unwilling; **nōlītē**, *w. infin.*, do not.

nōmen, nōminis (nōsco, know), *n.*, name.

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (nōmen), *tr.*, name, call.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnnūllus, a, um (nōn + nūllus), some, several.

Nōrēia, ae, *f.*, a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.

Nōricus, a, um, Norican; **ager Nōricus**, a country between the Danube and the Alps.

nōs, nostrum, *pers. pron.*, we, ourselves.

noster, nostra, nostrum (nōs), *poss. adj.*, our, ours; *pl.*, **nostrī, ōrum**, our men, our troops.

novem, *indecl.*, nine.

Noviodūnum, ī, *n.*, a town of the Suessiones.

novus, a, um, new; **novissimum**, last; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **multā nocte**, late at night; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūdus, bare), *tr.*, make bare, clear.

nūllus, a, um (nē + ūllus), no, not any, none, no one.

num, *interrog. particle*, implying the answer 'no.'

Numa, ae, *m.* *See* **Pompilius.**

numerus, ī, *m.*, number.

Numida, ae, *m.*, Numidian.

Numitor, ōris, *m.*, king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam (nē + umquam, ever), *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntius), *tr.*, report, announce.

nūntius, ī, *m.*, messenger.

nūper, *adv.*, recently, lately.

nusquam (nē + usquam, anywhere), *adv.*, nowhere, on no occasion.

O

ob, *prep. w. acc.*, for, on account of, because of.

obaerātus, ī (ob + aes, money), *m.*, debtor.

obdūcō, ere, obdūxī, obductus (ob + dūcō), *tr.*, extend, make.

obruō, ere, obruī, obrutus (ob + ruō, rush), *tr.*, overwhelm, bury, crush.

obses, obsidis (obsideō), *m.*, hostage, pledge.

obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus (ob + sedeō), *tr.*, besiege.

obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus (ob + sum), *w. dat.*, be against, injure.

obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus (ob + teneō), *tr.*, possess, obtain, retain.

obveniō, īre, obvēnī, obventum (ob + veniō), *intr.*, come to, meet, come.

occāsus, ūs (occidō, fall), *m.*, setting (of the sun).

occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus (ob + caedō, cut down), *tr.*, cut down, kill, slay.

occultus, a, um, hidden; **in occultō**, concealed.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + capiō), *tr.*, take possession of, seize, occupy.

Ōceanus, ī, *m.*, ocean.
Ocelum, ī, *n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.
octō, *indecl.*, eight.
oculus, ī, *m.*, eye.
odium, ī (odī, hate), *n.*, hatred, enmity.
omnīnō (**omnis**), *adv.*, altogether, at all.
omnis, e, all, every, whole.
opīniō, ōnis (**opīnor**, think), *f.*, notion, belief, impression.
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is proper.
oppidānus, ī (**oppidum**), *m.*, inhabitant of a town, townsman.
oppidum, ī, *n.*, walled town.
opprimō, ere, oppressī, oppressus (**ob** + **premō**, press), *tr.*, crush, fall upon.
oppugnātiō, ōnis (**oppugnō**), *f.*, assault, storm, siege.
oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ob**+**pugnō**), *tr.*, attack, besiege.
ops, opis, *f.*, aid; *pl.*, resources, wealth.
optimē (**optimus**), best, excellently. *See* **bene**.
optimus, a, um, *sup. of* **bonus**.
optiō, ōnis (**optō**), *f.*, choice.
optō, āre, āvī, ātus, wish, choose.
opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor, fortification.
ōrātiō, ōnis (**ōrō**), *f.*, speech, words.
ōrdinō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ōrdō**), *tr.*, arrange, regulate.
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, line, rank.
Orgetorīx, īgis, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetii.
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, rise.
ōrnātus, ūs (**ōrnō**, adorn), *m.*, attire, decoration.
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ōs**), *tr.*, beseech, beg.
ortus. *See* **orior**.
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face.

P

P. = **Pūblius**.
pācō, āre, āvī, ātus (**pāx**), *tr.*, pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.
palūs, ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.
pandō, ere, pandī, passus, *tr.*, spread out; **passīs manibus**, with outstretched hands.
pār, paris, equal (to).
parātus, a, um (**parō**), prepared, ready.
pāreō, ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, *intr. w. dat.*, obey.
parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, prepare, provide.
pars, partis, *f.*, part, side, direction.
parum, *adv.*, little; *comp.* **minus**; *sup.* **minimē**.
parvulus, a, um (**parvus**), very little; *as subst.* **parvulus, ī,** *m.*, little fellow.
parvus, a, um, little, small; *comp.* **minor**; *sup.* **minimus**.
passus. *See* **pandō** *and* **patior**.
passus, ūs, *m.*, pace; **mīlle passūs**, *pl.* **mīllia passuum**, a mile.
pāstor, ōris (**pāscō**, feed), *m.*, shepherd.
pateō, ēre, patuī, —, *intr.*, be open, extend.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
patior, patī, passus sum, *tr.*, suffer, allow, endure.
patria, ae (**patrius**), *f.*, country, native land.

patrius, a, um (**pater**), ancestral.
paucī, ōrum, few.
paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.
paululum (**paulus**, small), *adv.*, a little, somewhat.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *intr.*, transgress, offend.
pecūnia, ae (**pecus**), *f.*, money.
pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, herd.
pedes, peditis (**pēs**), *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry.
Pedius, ī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
peior, *comp. of* **malus**.
peius, *comp. of* **male**.
pello, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *tr.*, drive out, expel, rout, conquer.
per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, over, by, by means of.
peragrō, āre, āvī, ātus (**per** + **ager**), *tr.*, wander through, roam over.
perdūcō, ere, perdūxī, perductus (**per** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead, lead through, construct.
perennis, e (**per** + **annus**), perpetual, never failing.
perficiō, ere, perfēcī, perfectus (**per** + **faciō**), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete.
perfidus, a, um (**per** + **fīdus**), faithless, treacherous.
perīclitor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, make trial of, try.
perīculum, ī, *n.*, danger.
perītus, a, um, skillful.
permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus (**per** + **mittō**), *tr.*, give up, intrust, permit.
permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus (**per** + **moveō**), *tr.*, move, arouse, influence, alarm.
perpetuō (**perpetuus**, continuous), *adv.*, continually, forever.
perrumpō, ere, perrūpī, perruptus (**per** + **rumpō**, break), *tr.*, break through.
perspiciō, ere, perspēxī, perspectus (**per** + **speciō**, see), *tr.*, see through.
persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (**per** + **suādeō**, persuade), *tr.*, *w. dat. of pers.*, persuade, prevail on.
pertineō, ēre, pertinuī, — (**per** + **teneō**), *intr.*, extend, pertain, relate.
pertrāctus. *See* **pertrahō**.
pertrahō, ere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus (**per** + **trahō**), *tr.*, drag, lead.
perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventum, (**per** + **veniō**) *intr.*, arrive at, reach.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.
pessimē, *sup. of* **male**.
pessimus, *sup. of* **malus**.
petō, ere, petīvī *or* **petiī, petītus**, *tr.*, aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.
pietās, ātis (**pius**, pious), *f.*, devotion, loyalty.
piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.
pīgnus, pīgnoris, *n.*, pledge, assurance.
pīlum, ī, *n.*, javelin.
pirus, ī, *f.*, pear tree.
Plancus, ī. *See* **Mūnātius**.
plānitiēs, ēī (**plānus**, flat), *f.* plain, level ground.
plēbēs, ēī, *or* **plēbs, plēbis**, *f.*, common people.
plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, *generally in plural*, most, very many.
plūrimus, a, um (*sup. of* **multus**), most, very many; **plūrimum posse**, be very powerful, have most influence, be supreme.
plūs, *comp. of* **multum**.

plūs, plūris (*comp. of* **multus**), more; *pl.*, several, more.

pōculum, ī, *n.*, drinking cup.

poena, ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty; **poenās dare**, suffer punishment.

Poenī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, Carthaginians.

polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

Pompēius, ī, *m.*, Pompey.

Pompilius, ī, *m.*, Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *tr.*, place, put, pitch (a camp).

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.

poposcī. *See* **poscō**.

populor, ārī, ātus sum (**populus**), *tr.*, ravage, lay waste.

populus, ī, *m.*, people.

Porsena, ae, *f.*, king of Clusium in Etruria.

porta, ae, *f.*, gate, door.

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, carry, bring.

portus, ūs, *m.*, port, harbor.

poscō, ere, poposcī, —, *tr.*, ask, demand.

possideō, ēre, possēdī, —, *tr.*, hold, occupy.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can; **plūrimum posse**, be very powerful.

post, *adv.*, afterwards, later.

post, *prep. w. acc.*, after, behind.

posteā (**post** + **is**), *adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, a, um, following, next; *comp.* **posterior**; *sup.* **postrēmus**.

postquam (**post** + **quam**), *conj.*, after.

postrīdiē (**posterus** + **diēs**), *adv.*, on the following day.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, demand, ask.

potēns, potentis (*pres. part. of* **possum**), powerful, able.

potentātus, ūs (**potēns**), *m.*, supreme power, rule.

potestās, ātis (**potis**, able), *f.*, power, authority, privilege.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum (**potis**, able), *intr.*, *w. abl.*, get possession of.

prae, *prep. w. abl.*, before.

praebeō, ēre, praebuī, praebitus (**prae** + **habeō**), *tr.*, furnish, supply.

praecinō, ere, praecinuī, — (**prae** + **canō**, sing), *tr.*, play before.

praeda, ae, *f.*, booty, spoil.

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus (**prae** + **faciō**), *tr.*, set over, put in charge of.

praelūceō, ēre, praelūxī, — (**prae** + **lūceō**, shine), *intr.*, shine before.

praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus (**prae** + **mittō**), *tr.*, send ahead, dispatch.

praemium, ī, *n.*, reward.

praescrībō, ere, praescrīpsī, praescrīptus (**prae** + **scrībō**), *tr.*, direct, order.

praesidium, ī (**praesideō**, defend), *n.*, guard, defense, garrison.

praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus (**prae** + **stō**, stand), *intr.*, stand before, surpass, excel; *tr.*, show.

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus (**prae** + **sum**), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be at head of, be in charge of, command.

praetereā (**praeter**, beyond + **is**), *adv.*, [besides.

praeveniō, īre, praevēnī, praeventus (**prae** + **veniō**), *tr.*, come before, outstrip, forestall.

prātum, ī, *n.*, field, meadow.

prīmō (prīmus), *adv.*, at first.

prīmum (prīmus), *adv.*, first; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.

prīmus, a, um, first; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak; **prīmus dēvīcit,** was the first to conquer.

prīnceps, prīncipis (prīmus + capiō), *m.*, chief, leader, author.

prior, prius (prō), former, previous.

priusquam (prius, sooner + **quam),** *conj.*, before, sooner than.

prīvātus, a, um (prīvō, deprive), private.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; *comp.* **prior**; *sup.* **prīmus.**

Proca, ae, *m.*, a king of Alba Longa.

prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum (prō + cēdō), *intr.*, go forward, proceed, advance.

procul, *adv.*, far off, from afar.

prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (prō + cūrō), *tr.*, take care of, attend to; avert.

prōditiō, ōnis (prōdō, betray), *f.*, treachery, treason.

proelium, ī, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, ōnis (proficīscor), *f.*, setting forth, departure.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (prōficiō, advance), *intr.*, set out, go, march.

profugiō, ere, profūgī, — (prō + fugiō), *intr.*, flee, escape.

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum (prō + gradior, go), *intr.*, proceed, advance.

prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (prō + habeō), *tr.*, keep (away) from, prevent.

prōiciō, ere, prōiēcī, prōiectus (prō + iaciō), *tr.*, throw forth, abandon.

prōmittō, ere, prōmīsī, prōmissus (prō + mittō), *tr.*, promise.

prope, *adv.*, near, nearly; *comp.* **propius**; *sup.* **proximē.**

properō, āre, āvī, ātus, *intr.*, hasten.

propīnquitās, ātis (propīnquus, near), *f.*, nearness, relationship.

propior, propius (prope), nearer.

propius (*comp. of* **prope**), *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, nearer.

prōpōnō, ere, prōposuī, prōpositus (prō + pōnō), *tr.*, set forth, declare, propose.

propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus (prō + sum), *intr., w. dat.*, be of service or use to, benefit.

prōtinus, *adv.*, ahead, directly.

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus (prō + turbō, confuse), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge, repulse.

prōvincia, ae, *f.*, province.

prōvolō, āre, āvī, — (prō + volō), *intr.*, fly forth, rush out.

proximē (proximus), *adv.*, last, recently.

proximus, a, um (prope), nearest, next; **in proximō,** near by.

prūdēns, prūdentis (prō + vidēns), foreseeing, wise.

prūdenter (prūdēns), *adv.*, wisely.

pūblicus, a, um (populus), public; **rēs pūblica,** the state, republic.

Pūblius, ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

pudor, ōris, *m.*, sense of shame, honor.

puella, ae (puer), *f.*, girl.

puer, puerī, *m.*, boy.

pugna, ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum (pugnus, fist), *intr.*, fight; **pugnātum est,** they fought.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, pretty.

Pulcher, Pulchrī, *m.*, P. Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.

pulchrē (pulcher), *adv.*, beautifully.

pullārius, ī (pullus), *m.*, keeper of the sacred chickens.

pullus, ī, *m.*, chicken.

pulsus. *See* **pellō.**

Punicus, a, um, Punic, Phoenician, Carthaginian.

pūniō, īre, pūnīvī, pūnītus (poena), *tr.*, punish.

Pȳrēnaeus, a, um, (of the) Pyrenees.

Q

quadrāgintā, *indecl.*, forty.

quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, to seek, ask.

quam, than; *with a sup.*, as possible, possible.

quantus, a, um, how great, as.

quārē (quae + rēs), *adv.*, for which reason, therefore.

quasī (quam + sī), *adv.*, on the ground that, because.

quattuor, *indecl.*, four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that; **quam ob rem,** wherefore, therefore.

quicquam. *See* **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* **quiddam,** *indef. pron.*, certain, a certain one, somebody.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, truly.

quīn, *conj.*, that not; that; from (*after verbs of hindering*).

quīndecim (quīnque + decem), *indecl.*, fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque, *indecl.*, five.

Quīntus, ī (quīntus, fifth), *m.*, a Roman name.

Quirinālis, is, *m.*, Quirinal, one of the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, ī, *n.*, the name given to Romulus after his deification.

quis, quae, quid *and* **quī, quae** *or* **qua, quod,** *interrog. and indef. pron.*, who, which, what; any, any one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam *or* **quodquam,** *indef. pron.*, any, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* **quodque,** *indef. pron.*, each (one), every (one).

quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs *or* **quidvīs (quī + vīs,** *from* **volō),** *indef. pron.*, any one you please.

quō (quī), *adv.*, where, whither.

quod (quī), *conj.*, because.

quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly.

quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.

quoque, *adv.*, also, likewise.

R

rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptus, *tr.*, seize, steal.

ratiō, ōnis (reor, think), *f.*, consideration, method.

ratis, is, *f.*, raft.

Rauracī, ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe near the Rhine.

recidō, ere, recidī, — (cadō), *intr.*, fall back, fall, come back to.

recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (capiō), *tr.*, take back; **sē recipere**, betake one's self, retreat.

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (dō), *tr.*, give back, return, render.

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus, *intr.*, go back, return.

redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātus (integer, whole), *tr.*, restore, renew.

reditiō, ōnis (redeō), *f.*, return.

redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus (dūcō), *tr.*, lead back.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (ferō), *tr.*, carry back; **pedem referre**, retreat.

rēgīna, ae (rēx), *f.*, queen.

rēgius, a, um (rēx), kingly, royal; **aedēs rēgiae**, palace.

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum (rēgnum), *intr.*, be king, reign.

rēgnum, ī (rēx), *n.*, royal power, [kingdom.

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, *tr.*, guide, rule.

relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (lābor, slip), *intr.*, sink back, subside.

religiō, ōnis, *f.*, piety; *pl.*, rites.

relinquō, ere, relīquī, relictus (linquō, leave), *tr.*, leave behind, leave.

reliquus, a, um, remaining, left, the rest of; **nihil reliquī**, nothing left; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future.

remaneō, ēre, remānsī, — (maneō), *intr.*, remain, stay.

remūneror, ārī, ātus sum (mūnus), *tr.*, repay, reward.

Remus, ī, *m.*, the brother of Romulus.

Rēmus, ī, *m.*, a Reman, one of the Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntiō), *tr.*, report.

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus (pellō), *tr.*, drive back, repulse.

repente, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly.

reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus (pariō, produce), *tr.*, find, discover, ascertain.

reppulī. *See* **repellō.**

reprehendō, ere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus (prehendō, seize), *tr.*, blame, censure.

reprōmittō, ere, reprōmīsī, reprōmissus (prōmittō), *tr.*, promise in return.

rēs, reī, *f.*, thing, affair, circumstance; **rēs frūmentāria**, provisions, supplies of grain; **rēs pūblica**, state, republic; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, therefore.

rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus (scindō, break down), *tr.*, break down, destroy.

resistō, ere, restitī, — (sistō, place), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, oppose, resist, hold one's ground.

respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus (spondeō, promise), *tr.*, reply, answer.

restituō, ere, restituī, restitūtus (statuō), *tr.*, renew, restore.

retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus (teneō), *tr.*, hold back, keep back, detain, retain.

revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus (vertō), *intr.*, turn back, return.

revīviscō, ere, —, — (vīvō), *intr.*, be alive again.

revocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vocō), *tr.*, recall.

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.

Rhēa, ae, *f.*, Rhea Silvia, **the mother** of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, ī, *m.*, the Rhine.

Rhodanus, ī, *m.*, the Rhone.

rigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, wet, moisten.
rīpa, ae, *f.*, bank (of a river).
rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, oak; strength.
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, ask, beg.
Rōma, ae, *f.*, Rome.
Rōmānus, a, um (Rōma), Roman; *as subst.* **Rōmānus, ī,** *m.*, a Roman.
Rōmulus, ī, *m.*, the reputed founder of Rome.
rosa, ae, *f.*, rose.
rūmor, ōris, *m.*, rumor, report.
rūrsus (revertō), *adv.*, back, again.
rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; **rūrī,** in the country.

S

Sabīnus, ī, *m.* 1. A Sabine. 2. *See* **Titūrius.**
Sabis, is, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, the modern Sambre.
sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy, sacred; *as subst.* **sacrum, ī,** *n.*, a holy thing, religious rite.
sacerdōs, ōtis (sacer), *m. and f.*, priest, priestess.
sacrificium, ī (sacer + faciō), *n.*, sacrifice.
sacrum. *See* **sacer.**
saepe, *adv.*, often; **saepius,** very often.
saepēs, is, *f.*, hedge, fence.
sagitta, ae, *f.*, arrow.
sagittārius, ī (sagitta), *m.*, bowman.
Saliī, ōrum (saliō, leap), *m.*, dancing priests of Mars.
saltem, *adv.*, at least.
saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), *m.*, jump; ravine.
Santonēs, um, *m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe near the Garonne.
sarcina, ae, *f.*, bundle, pack.
satis, *adv. and indecl. noun.* enough.
saxum, ī, *n.*, rock, stone.
Scaevola, ae (scaeva, left-handed), *m.*, a surname of Gaius Mucius.
scapha, ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.
scientia, ae (sciō), *f.*, knowledge, skill.
sciō, scīre, scīvī *or* **sciī, scītus,** *tr.*, know, know how.
scrība, ae (scrībō), *m.*, writer, scribe, secretary.
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *tr.*, write.
scūtum, ī, *n.*, shield.
sē. *See* **suī.**
sēcrētus, a, um (sēcernō, separate), concealed, hidden, secret.
secundum (secundus), *prep. w. acc.*, along.
secundus, a, um (sequor), following, second; favorable.
secūtus. *See* **sequor.**
sed, *conj.*, but.
sēdecim, *indecl.*, sixteen.
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit.
sedīle, is (sedeō), *n.*, seat.
sēgnis, e, slow, sluggish.
Segusiāvī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.
sella, ae (sedeō), *f.*, seat, chair; **sella curūlis,** a portable chair, opening like a camp-stool. Its use belonged at first only to the king, but later to curule aediles, praetors, consuls, dictators, and the Flamines.
semper, *adv.*, always, ever.
senātor, ōris (senex), *m.*, senator.
senātus, ūs (senex), *m.*, senate.
senectūs, ūtis (senex), *f.*, old age.
senex, *gen.* **senis,** old, aged; *comp.* **senior;** *sup.* **maximus nātū.**
Senonēs, um, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

sententia, ae (**sentiō**, discern), *f.*, opinion, decision.

sepeliō, īre, sepelīvī, sepultus, *tr.*, bury.

septem, *indecl.*, seven.

septuāgintā, *indecl.*, seventy.

sepultus. *See* **sepeliō**.

Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian; *as subst.* **Sēquanus, ī**, *m.*, a Sequanian, one of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow.

servō, āre, āvī, ātus (**servus**), *tr.*, keep, preserve, save.

servus, ī, *m.*, slave.

sēsē. *See* **suī**.

sex, *indecl.*, six.

sī, *conj.*, if; **sī minus**, if not.

sibi. *See* **suī**.

sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.

siccus, a, um, dry; **in siccō**, on dry ground.

sīgnificō, āre, āvī, ātus (**sīgnum** + **faciō**), *tr.*, signify, declare.

sīgnum, ī, *n.*, sign, signal, standard, ensign; **sīgna convertere**, face about; **sīgna īnferre**, charge.

silēns, silentis (**sileō**, be still), silent, quiet.

silva, ae, *f.*, wood, forest.

silvestris, e (**silva**), wooded.

similis, e, like, similar.

simulō, āre, āvī, ātus (**similis**), *tr.*, pretend.

sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.

singulī, ae, a, one by one, individual, each.

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left.

societās, ātis (**socius**), *f.*, alliance.

sociō, āre, āvī, ātus (**socius**), *tr.*, join, share.

socius, ī (**sequor**), *m.*, companion, ally.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun; **sōle ortō**, at sunrise.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, *intr.*, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, inis (**sōlus**), *f.*, wilderness.

solitus. *See* **soleō**.

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, stir up, arouse, provoke.

sōlus, a, um, only, alone, sole.

somnium, ī (**somnus**), *n.*, dream.

somnus, ī, *m.*, sleep.

soror, ōris, *f.*, sister.

spatium, ī, *n.*, space, distance, time, opportunity.

spectāculum, ī (**spectō**, behold), *n.*, sight, show, spectacle.

speculātor, ōris, *m.*, scout, spy.

spērō, āre, āvī, ātus (**spēs**), *tr.*, hope, expect.

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.

sponte (*abl.*), of one's own accord.

statim (**stō**), *adv.*, forthwith, immediately.

statiō, ōnis (**stō**), *f.*, post, picket, guard.

statua, ae (**statuō**), *f.*, image, statue.

statuō, ere, statuī, statūtus, *tr.*, place, decide, determine.

stella, ae, *f.*, star.

stīpendium, ī (**stīps**, gift + **pendō**, pay), *n.*, pay, tribute.

strepitus, ūs, *m.*, noise.

studeō, ēre, studuī, —, *intr.*, be eager for, desire.

studium, ī (**studeō**), *n.*, zeal, eagerness.

stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.

sub, *prep. w. abl. and acc.: w. abl.*, under, below, at the foot of; *w. acc.*, under, up to, to the foot of.

subdūcō, ere, subdūxī, subductus (sub + dūcō), *tr.*, bring up.

subitō (subitus, sudden), *adv.*, suddenly.

sublātus. *See* **tollō**.

subruō, ere, subruī, subrutus (sub + ruō, overthrow), *tr.*, dig under, undermine.

subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum (sub + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

subsidium, ī (sub + sedeō), *n.*, aid, relief.

succēdō, ere, successī, successum (sub + cēdō), *tr. and intr.*, come up, approach.

successus, ūs (succēdō), *m.*, approach.

Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sufficiō, ere, suffēcī, suffectum (sub + faciō), *intr.*, be sufficient.

suī, *pers. pron.*, of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; *dat.* **sibi**, *acc. and abl.* **sē, sēsē**; **inter sē**, to one another.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*, be; *w. dat. of possessor*, have.

summa, ae (summus), *f.*, the whole; leadership, supremacy.

summus. *See* **superus**.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *tr.*, take, assume, begin (battle).

super, *prep. w. acc. and abl.*, over, upon, in addition to.

superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.

supericiō, ere, superiēcī, superiectus (super + iaciō), *tr.*, throw across.

superior. *See* **superus**.

superō, āre, āvī, ātus (superus), *tr.*, surpass, overcome, conquer.

supersedeō, ēre, supersēdī, supersessus (super + sedeō), *intr., w. dat.*, be superior, refrain from.

supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus (super + sum), *intr., w. dat.*, be over, survive.

superus, a, um (super), above; *comp.* **superior, ius**, upper, former; *sup.* **suprēmus, summus**, highest, very great, top of.

superveniō, īre, supervēnī, superventum (super + veniō), *intr.*, arrive.

supplicium, ī (supplex, suppliant), *n.*, punishment, death.

suprā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, above, before.

suprēmus. *See* **superus**.

suscipiō, ere, suscēpī, susceptus (sub + capiō), *tr.*, undertake.

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus (sustineō), *tr.*, endure, withstand.

sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus (sub + teneō), *tr. and intr.*, hold up, withstand, sustain.

sustulī. *See* **tollō**.

suus, a, um (suī), his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; **suaque omnia**, all their possessions.

T

T. = **Titus**.

tam, *adv.*, so (*w. adjectives and adverbs*).

tamen, *adv.*, however, yet, nevertheless.

tantus, a, um (tam), so great, such.

Tarpēia, ae, *f.*, a Roman girl in the time of Romulus.

Tatius, ī, *m.*, Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.

tē, *acc. of* **tū.**

tēlum, ī, *n.*, missile, weapon.

temeritās, ātis, *f.*, rashness.

tempestās, ātis (tempus), *f.*, storm, [tempest.

templum, ī, *n.*, temple.

tempus, temporis, *n.*, time, occasion.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus *and* **tēnsus,** *tr.*, spread out, stretch.

teneō, ēre, tenuī,—, *tr.*, hold. [delicate.

tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, young,

terra, ae, *f.*, earth, land, country; **terrā,** by land.

terreō, ēre, terruī, territus, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

tertius, a, um (trēs), third.

testūdō, inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed.

Teutonī, ōrum *or* **Teutonēs, um,** *m. pl.*, Teutons, a Germanic people on the Baltic.

Tiberis, is, *m.*, the Tiber.

tibi, *dat. of* **tū.**

tībīcen, inis, *m.*, piper, flute player.

timeō, ēre, timuī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of.

timidus, a, um (timeō), afraid, timid.

timor, ōris, *m.*, fear.

Titūrius, ī, *m.*, **Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus,** one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *tr.*, lift up, raise; remove, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, ium, *m. pl.*, Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

tormentum, ī (torqueō, twist), *n.*, a military engine for hurling missiles.

Torquātus, ī (torquis, necklace), *m.*, a surname of Titus Manlius. *See* **Mānlius.**

tōtus, a, um, whole, all.

trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus (trāns + dō), *tr.*, give over, give up, deliver, surrender.

trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus (trāns + dūcō), *tr.*, lead over, transport.

trāiciō, ere, trāiēcī, trāiectus (trāns + iaciō), *tr.*, throw or carry across, pass over, transfix.

Trallēs, Trallium, *f.*, a town of Lydia.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across, over, through.

trānseō, īre, trānsiī, trānsitus (trāns + eō), *tr. and intr.*, cross, go over, pass over, go across.

trānsfugiō, ere, trānsfūgī, — **(trāns + fugiō),** *intr.*, flee over, go over.

trānsgredior, trānsgredī, trānsgressus sum (trāns + gradior, go), *tr.*, go over, pass over.

trānsiliō, īre, trānsiluī, — **(trāns + saliō,** leap), *tr.*, leap over, jump across.

trānsversus, a, um (trānsvertō, turn across), transverse; **trānsversa fossa,** cross ditch.

trecentī, ae, a (trēs + centum), three hundred.

tredecim (trēs + decem), *indecl.*, thirteen.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūnal, ālis (tribūnus), *n.*, judgment seat, tribunal.

tribūnus, ī (tribus, tribe), *m.*, tribune, a military officer.

trīduum, ī (trēs + diēs), *n.*, interval of three days.

trīgintā, *indecl.*, thirty.

triumphus, ī, *m.*, triumph.

tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, you, thou.

tuba, ae, *f.*, trumpet.
tulī. *See* **ferō**.
Tulingī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.
tum, *adv.*, then, in the next place.
tumultus, ī, *m.*, uproar, disturbance.
tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.
turba, ae, *f.*, throng, crowd.
turpis, e. ugly, disgraceful, infamous.
turris, is, *f.*, tower.
tūtēla, ae (**tueor**, protect), *m.*, guardian, protection.
tūtus, a, um (**tueor**, protect), safe.
tuus, a, um (**tū**), your, yours.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.
ūllus, a, um, any, any one.
ulterior, **ulterius**, farther; *sup.* **ultimus**, a, um.
ultrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, beyond, farther.
ūnā (**ūnus**), *adv.*, together with.
unde, *adv.*, whence.
ūndecim (**ūnus** + **decem**), *indecl.*, eleven.
undique, *adv.*, from *or* on all sides.
ūniversus, a, um (**ūnus** + **vertō**, turn), whole, entire.
ūnus, a, um, one.
urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, city.
ūsus, a, um. *See* **ūtor**.
ūsus, ūs (**ūtor**), *m.*, use, advantage, benefit, help; **ūsuī esse**, be of service.
ut, **utī**, (1) *adv.*, as when; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.
uter, **utra**, **utrum**, which (of two), which one.
uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, each (of two), both.
utī. *See* **ut**.
ūtī. *See* **ūtor**.
ūtilis, e (**ūtor**), useful.
utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may.
ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, *intr., w. abl.*, use, employ.
uxor, **ōris**, *f.*, wife.

V

vacuus, a, um, empty, destitute of, vacant.
vadum, ī, *n.*, shoal, ford.
vāgītus, ūs (**vāgiō**, cry), *m.*, crying, squalling.
Valerius, ī, *m.*, **Mārcus Valerius Maximus Corvīnus**, consul 343 B.C.
validus, a, um (**valeō**, be strong), strong, sturdy.
vāllum, ī, *n.*, wall, rampart, earthworks.
vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus (**vāstus**), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.
vāstus, a, um, vast, enormous.
vēlōcitās, ātis (**vēlōx**), *f.*, speed, swiftness.
vēlōx, **vēlōcis**, swift, quick.
velut, **velutī**, *adv.*, as if, just as if.
venia, ae, *f.*, favor, permission.
veniō, īre, vēnī, **ventum**, *intr.*, come; **in fidem venīre**, put one's self under the protection of.
vēnor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, hunt, chase.
verbum, ī, *n.*, word; **verba facere**, speak.
vereor, ērī, **veritus sum**, *tr.*, fear, be afraid of.
vergō, ere, —, —, *intr.*, lie toward, incline.
veritus. *See* **vereor**.
vērō (**vērus**, true), *adv.*, in fact, indeed, however.

vertex, verticis (vertō, turn), *m.*, summit, crest.

vērum (vērus, true) *adv.*, certainly, but.

vēscor, vēscī, —, *def., w. abl.*, eat.

Vesta, ae, *f.*, goddess of the hearth, and hence of the family and state. Her sacred fire, kept continually burning in her temple near the Forum, was watched by six priestesses, called Vestals.

vester, vestra, vestrum (vōs), your, yours.

vestis, is, *f.*, garment, clothing.

vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, *tr.*, forbid.

vetus, veteris, old, ancient; *comp.* **vetustior**; *sup.* **veterrimus.**

vēxillum, ī, *n.*, a military ensign.

via, ae, *f.*, way, road, street, journey.

vīcī. *See* **vincō.**

vīcīnus, a, um (vīcus), neighboring, near.

victor, ōris (vincō), *m.*, conqueror, victor.

victōria, ae (victor), *f.*, victory.

victus, victūrus. *See* **vincō.**

vīcus, ī, *m.*, village.

vidēlicet (videō + licet), *adv.*, of course, that is.

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *tr.*, see; *pass.*, seem, appear.

vigilia, ae, *f.*, watching, watch (a fourth part of the night).

vīgintī, *indecl.*, twenty.

vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus, *tr.*, bind.

vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *tr.*, conquer, overcome.

vinculum, ī (vinciō), *n.*, chain, fetter; **in** *or* **ex vinculīs**, in chains.

vindicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, punish, inflict punishment.

vīnea, ae, *f.*, a military shed.

vīnum, ī, *n.*, wine.

vīnxī. *See* **vinciō.**

vir, virī, *m.*, man.

vīrēs. *See* **vīs.**

virgō, virginis, *f.*, virgin, maiden, girl.

Viromanduī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

virtūs, virtūtis (vir), *f.*, manhood, virtue, bravery, courage.

vīs, vim, *f.*, power, force, number; *pl.* **vīrēs**, strength.

vīta, ae, *f.*, life.

vīvō, ere, vīxī, —, *intr.*, live.

vix, *adv.*, hardly, barely.

vīxī. *See* **vīvō.**

vocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vōx), *tr.*, call, summon.

Vocontiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Gaul.

1. volō, velle, voluī, —, wish, desire, be willing.

2. volō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, *intr.*, fly.

voluntārius, a, um (voluntās), willing, voluntary.

voluntās, ātis (1. volō), *f.*, desire, consent, favor.

vōs, *pl. of* **tū.**

voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *tr.*, vow, promise.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice; *pl.*, words.

vulgō (vulgus, multitude), *adv.*, generally, everywhere.

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus (vulnus), *tr.*, wound.

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

vultur, vulturis, *m.*, vulture.

vultus, ūs, *m.*, expression, looks, countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH—LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

able, potēns, potentis; **be able**, possum, posse, potuī.

about to, be, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *fut. participle.*

above, superus.

absent, be, absum, āfuī, āfutūrus.

abundance, cōpia, ae, *f.*

accomplish, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.

account of, on, *abl. of cause;* ob, propter, *w. acc.*

across, trāns, *w. acc.;* (**a bridge**) **across the river**, in flūmine.

adjoining, fīnitimus, a, um.

administer, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

advance, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum; prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.

advantage, ūsus, ūs, *m.*

advice, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*

advise, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

affair, rēs, reī, *f.*

afraid, be, timeō, ēre, timuī, —.

after, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.;* *conj.*, postquam.

afterwards, *adv.*, posteā.

against, in, contrā, *w. acc.;* **be against**, obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus.

agreeable, grātus, a, um.

aid, auxilium, ī, *n.* [*w. dat.*

aid, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus,

aim, petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītus.

alarm, permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.

alliance, amīcitia, ae, *f.*

allow, patior, patī, passus sum; permittō, ere, permīsī, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessī, concessum.

ally, socius, ī, *m.*

alone, sōlus, a, um.

already, iam.

although, cum, *w. subjv.;* *abl. abs.*, 315.

always, semper.

am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

ambassador, lēgātus, ī, *m.*

among, inter, apud, *w. acc.;* **be among**, īnsum, inesse, īnfuī, īnfutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *w. dat.*

ample, amplus, a, um.

ancient, vetus, veteris.

and, et, -que, atque; **and not**, neque.

animal, animal, animālis, *n.*

announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.

another, alius, a, ud; **to one another**, inter sē; **another's**, aliēnus, a, um.

answer, respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus.
any, any one, ūllus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod; quisquam, quicquam; quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs.
appoint, cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus.
approach, adventus, ūs, *m.*; aditus, ūs, *m.*
approach, appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*; accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus, *w.* ad *and acc.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*
arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.
arms, arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*; **army on the march**, agmen, agminis, *n.*
around, circum, *w. acc.*
arouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus; permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
arrange, īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus.
arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventum.
arrow, sagitta, ae, *f.*
art, ars, artis, *f.*
ascertain, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus.
assemble, conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventus.
at, ad, *w. acc.*; *sign of abl. of time.*
Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.*
attack, impetus, ūs, *m.*
attack, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus.
attempt, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.
authority, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; potestās, ātis, *f.*
await, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

bad, malus, a, um.
baggage, impedīmenta, ōrum, *n. plur.*
band, manus, ūs, *f.*
bank (of river), rīpa, ae, *f.*
barbarous, barbarus, a, um.
battle, proelium, ī, *n.*; pugna, ae, *f.*; **line of battle**, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
beautifully, pulchrē.
because, quod; *abl. of cause*; **because of**, propter, *w. acc.*
before, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*
beg, petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītus; rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.
begin, coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum; **begin battle**, proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.
behalf of, in, prō, *w. abl.*
behind, post, *w. acc.*
Belgae, Belgae, ārum, *m.*
believe, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus; crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *w. dat.*
below, īnferus, a, um.
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*
benefit, ūsus, ūs, *n.*
besiege, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus.
best, optimus, a, um; *adv.*, optimē.
betake one's self, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (*refl.*).
between, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
bind, vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus.
bird, avis, is, *f.*
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*
booty, praeda, ae, *f.*
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom of, īmus, a, um.
boundary, fīnēs, ium, *m. plur.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
break up camp, castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; portō, āre, āvī, ātus; **bring in,** īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus; **bring together,** cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus; faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, ī, *n.*
burn, incendō, ere, incendī, incēnsus.
but, sed, at; autem (*postpositive*).
by, *sign of abl.;* ā *or* ab, *w. abl.;* **by means of,** *abl. of means;* per, *w. acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus; appellō, āre, āvī, ātus; **call together,** convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus; expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
care, cūra, ae, *f.*
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, dīligentia, ae, *f.*
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; **carry back,** referō, referre, rettulī, relātus; **carry on,** gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, *f.*
case, causa, ae, *f.*
cause, causa, ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.;* equitēs, um, *m. plur.;* **(of the) cavalry,** equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, ae, *m.*
certain, a . . . one, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam.
chain, vinculum, ī; **in chains,** ex vinculīs.
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m.*
change, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.
charge, sīgna īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus.
charge of, be in, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *w. dat.;* **put in charge of,** praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. dat.*
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
children, līberī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, reī, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, is, *m. and f.*
citizenship, cīvitās, ātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n.*
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum; **come around,** circumveniō, īre, circum-

vēnī, circumventus; **come near,** accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus; **come together,** conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventus; **come up,** perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventus.

command, imperium, ī, *n.*

command, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus; praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus (*w. dat.*).

commander, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, ōris, *m.*

commit, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

companion, socius, ī, *m.*

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

complete, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.

concerning, dē, *w. abl.*

condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

confer, conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.

confidence, fidēs, eī, *f.*

congratulate, grātulor, ārī, ātus sum.

conquer, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; vincō, ere, vīcī, victus.

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

conspirator, coniūrātus, ī, *m.*

consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*

contend, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus; dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātus.

contracted, angustus, a, um.

convert, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.

Corinth, Corinthus, ī, *f.*

country, terra, ae, *f.*; patria, ae, *f.*; rūs, rūris, *n.*; **in the country,** rūrī.

courage, animus, ī, *m.*

cross, trānseō, īre, trānsiī, trānsitus.

crowd, vulgus, ī, *n.*; multitūdō, inis, *f.*

cry, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

cup, pōculum, ī, *n.*

custom, cōnsuētūdō, inis, *f.*

cut down, occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus.

D

daily, cottīdiānus, a, um; *adv.*, cottīdiē.

danger, perīculum, ī, *n.*

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

daughter, fīlia, ae, *f.*

day, diēs, diēī, *m.*

daybreak, at, prīmā lūce.

daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

dear, cārus, a, um; grātus, a, um.

dearly, cārē.

death, mors, mortis, *f.*

deed, factum, ī, *n.*

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat, calamitās, ātis, *f.*

defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus.

defense, praesidium, ī, *n.*

delay, moror, ārī, ātus sum.

delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

deliver (= **set free**), līberō, āre, āvī, ātus; (= **hand over**) trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus.

Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m.*

demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītus.

depart, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.

dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

depth, altitūdō, inis, *f.*

desire, cupiō, ere, cupīvī *or* cupiī, cupītus.

desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.

determine, cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus.

die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

difficult, difficilis, e.
diligence, dīligentia, ae, *f.*
direct, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
disaster, calamitās, ātis, *f.*
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
disgraceful, turpis, e.
dismiss, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.
dispatch, praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus.
disposition, animus, ī, *m.*
dissimilar, dissimilis, e.
ditch, fossa, ae, *f.*
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
document, litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*
door, porta, ae, *f.*
down from, dē, *w. abl.*
draw near, appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātum, [*w. dat.*
draw up, īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus.
drive away, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
during, inter, *w. acc.*

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque; **each (of two)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; **eager for**, cupidus, a, um (*w. gen.*).
eagerly, ācriter; cum studiō.
earthworks, vāllum, ī, *n.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, e.
eight, octō.
employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
encourage, hortor, ārī, ātus sum; cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
end, fīnis, is, *m.*
enemy, hostis, is, *m. and f.*
enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *w. abl.*
enough, satis, *indecl.*
ensign, sīgnum, ī, *n.*
entangle, impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus.
equal, pār, paris.
equestrian, equester, equestris, equestre.
equip, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.
establish, cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Europe, Eurōpa, ae, *f.*
even, *express by* ipse, a, um.
ever, semper.
every, omnis, e.
evil, malus, a, um.
exceedingly, *express by superlative.*
except, nisi.
exchange, inter sē dare.
exhort, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum.
expect, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
expel, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.

F

face about, sīgna convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus.
facing, adversus, a um; *prep.*, adversus, *w. acc.* [*w. dat.*
fail, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus,
faithful, fīdus, a, um.
fall, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
falling, cāsus, us, *m.*
famous, *express by* ille, illa, illud.
far, far off, longē.
farmer, agricola, ae, *m.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor, grātia, ae, *f.*
fear, timeō, ēre, timuī, —; vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
fertile, ferāx, ferācis.
few, paucī, ae, a (*plur.*).
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; asper, aspera,

asperum ; ferus, a, um.
fiercely, ācriter.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum ; **fight a battle**, proelium facere.
fill up, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.
finally, dēnique.
find, inveniō, īre, invēnī, inventus ; reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
fire, ignis, is, *m.* ; **set fire to**, incendō, ere, incendī, incēnsus.
first, prīmus, a, um ; **at first**, prīmō.
fit, idōneus, a, um.
five, quīnque.
flank, latus, lateris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.
flight, fuga, ae, *f.* ; **put to flight**, in fugam dare.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, a, um.
food, cibus, ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.* ; **at the foot of**, sub, *w. abl.* ; **to the foot of**, sub, *w. acc.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of dat.* ; ob, propter, *w. acc.* ; prō, *w. abl.*
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.
force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus.
former, ille, illa, illud.
fort, castellum, ī, *n.*
fortifications, moenia, ium, *n. plur.*
fortify, mūniō, īre, mūnīvī or mūniī, [mūnītus.
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*
forty, quadrāgintā.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, a, um.
free, līber, lībera, līberum.
free, līberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
freedom, lībertās, ātis, *f.*
frequently, saepe.
friend, amīcus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
from, *sign of abl.* ; ā *or* ab, ē *or* ex, dē, *w. abl.*
future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
gather, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, *f.* ; **(inhabitant)**, Gallus, ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.* ; imperātor, ōris, *m.*
gentle, lēnis, e.
gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*
girl, puella, ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give back**, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ; **give up**, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus ; permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus ; trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum ; proficīscor, ī, profectus sum ; **go across** *or* **over**, trānseō, īre, trānsiī, trānsitus ; **go back**, redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus ; **go forward**, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum ; **go near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus ; **go out**, exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus ; **let go**, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus ; **be going to**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437).

god, deus, ī, *m.*
goddess, dea, ae, *f.*
good, bonus, a, um.
graceful, gracilis, e.
grain, frūmentum, ī, *n.*; **supplies of grain**, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
great, magnus, a, um; **great many**, complūrēs, ia, *plur.*; **so great**, tantus, a, um.
greatness, magnitūdō, inis, *f.*
Greece, Graecia, ae, *f.*
Greek, Graecus, ī, *m.*
ground, on the, humī.
guard, praesidium, ī, *n.*
guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, cōnsuētūdō, inis, *f.*
hand, manus, ūs, *f.*
Hannibal, Hannibal, is, *m.*
happen, accidō, ere, accidī, —.
harass, lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus.
harbor, portus, ūs, *m.*
hard, difficilis, e.
hardly, vix.
harm, noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *w. dat.*
hasten, mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum; contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
haughty, superbus, a, um.
have, habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus; *dat. of possessor*; **have to**, *passive periphrastic conjugation* (438–9).
he, is; hīc; ille; **he who**, is quī.
head, caput, capitis, *n.*; **be at the head of**, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *w. dat.*
hear, audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus.
height, altitūdō, inis, *f.*
help, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *w. dat.*
help, auxilium, ī, *n.*; ūsus, ūs, *m.*
Helvetians, Helvētiī, ōrum, *plur.*
her, hers, eius; suus, a, um; **her (own)**, suus, a, um.
herself, *see* self.
high, altus, a, um.
hill, collis, is, *m.*; **up the hill**, adversō colle.
himself, *see* self.
hindrance, impedīmentum, ī, *n.*
his, eius; huius; illīus; suus, a, um.
hither, hūc.
hold, teneō, ēre, tenuī, tentus; **hold back**, retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus; **hold together**, contineō, ēre, continuī, contentus; **hold up**, sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
home, domus, ūs *or* ī, *f.*; **at home**, domī.
honor, pudor, ōris, *m.*
hope, spērō, āre, āvī, ātus.
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horn, cornū, ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
hour, hōra, ae, *f.*
house, domus, ūs *or* ī, *f.*
however, autem; tamen.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus.
hurry, contendō, ere, contendī, contentum; mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

I

I, ego, meī.
Ides, Īdūs, Īduum, *f. plur.*
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.

impede, impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus.
in, *sign of abl.;* in, *w. abl.;* **be in,** īnsum, inesse, īnfuī, īnfutūrus.
incite, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.
industry, dīligentia, ae, *f.*
infamous, turpis, e.
infantry, peditēs, um, *m. plur.*
influence, grātia, ae, *f.;* auctōritās, ātis, *f.;* **have most influence,** plūrimum posse.
influence, permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
inhabit, incolō, ere, incoluī, —.
inhabitant, incola, ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *w. dat.;* obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus, *w. dat.*
intend, in animō habēre; in animō [esse, *w. dat.*
into, in, *w. acc.*
intrust, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus; permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus.
island, īnsula, ae, *f.*
it, is, ea, id.
Italy, Ītalia, ae, *f.*
its, eius; suus, a, um.

J

January, Iānuārius, ī, *m.*
javelin, pīlum, ī, *n.*
join, iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus; **join battle,** proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.
joint, artus, ūs, *m.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
judgment, iūdicium, ī, *n.*

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
keep, servō, āre, āvī, ātus; **keep (away) from,** prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus.
kill, necō, āre, āvī, ātus; interficiō, ere, interfēcī, interfectus; occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus.
kindness, grātia, ae, *f.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; *perf. of* cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī.
labor, labor, ōris, *m.;* opus, operis, *n.*
lack, inopia, ae, *f.*
lack, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *w. abl.*
lacking, be, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *w. dat.*
land, terra, ae, *f.;* **native land,** patria, ae, *f.*
large, magnus, a, um; amplus, a, um.
last, at, dēnique.
late at night, multā nocte; **till late at night,** ad multam noctem.
latter, hīc, haec, hoc.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum.
lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead across** *or* **over,** trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus; **lead back,** redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus; **lead out,** ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.;* prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
learn, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; discō, ere, didicī, —; **learn of,** cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

leave, *intrans.*, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus. *trans.*, **leave, leave behind**, relinquō, ere, relīquī, relictus.
left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.
left (= **remaining**), reliquus, a, um; **nothing left**, nihil reliquī.
legion, legiō, ōnis, *f.*
lest, nē, *w. subjv.*
let, *sign of imper. or subjv.*; **let go**, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.
letter (**of alphabet**), littera, ae, *f.*; (**epistle**), litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*
liberate, līberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
liberty, lībertās, ātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
life, vīta, ae, *f.*
lift up, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
like, similis, e.
like, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*
little, parvus, a, um.
live, vīvō, ere, vīxī, —.
long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.
lord, dominus, ī, *m.*
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
low, humilis, e.
loyal, fīdus, a, um.

M

mad, īnsānus, a, um.
make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m. and f.*; **a man who**, is quī.
manage, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
manhood, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
many, *plural of* multus, a, um; **very many**, complūrēs, complūria.
march, iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, ex itinere.
march, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum; iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m.*
master, magister, magistrī, *m.*; dominus, ī, *m.*
may, *sign of wish*; utinam, *w. subjv.*
means of, by, *abl. of means*; per, *w. acc.*
mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m.*
Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, ī, *m.*
middle of, medius, a, um.
mile, mīlle passūs; *plur.*, mīllia passuum.
mind, animus, ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*; **have in mind**, in animō habēre; in animō esse, *w. dat.*; **turn the mind to**, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.
mine, meus, a, um.
misfortune, cāsus, ūs, *m.*
money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, is, *m.*
moon, lūna, ae, *f.*
more, plūs, plūris; *sign of comparative.*
moreover, autem (*postpositive*).
most, *sign of superlative.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multum, multō.
multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f.*
must, *passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent* (438–9).
my, meus, a, um.
myself, *see* **self.**

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
name, appellō, āre, āvī, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
native land, patria, ae, *f.*
near, ad, apud, *w. acc.*; **come near, go near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus.
nearest, proximus, a, um.
need, be in need of, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *w. abl.*
neighbor, fīnitimus, ī, *m.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, a, um.
neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, a, um.
next, proximus, a, um; posterus, a, um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **late at night**, multā nocte.
nineteen, ūndēvīgintī.
no, nōn; **no one, none**, nūllus, a, um; nēmō, *dat.* nēminī.
nor, neque.
north wind, aquilō, ōnis, *m.*
not, nōn; **and not, but not**, neque; **not to**, nē, *w. subjv.*; **if not**, nisi; **that not**, nē, *w. subjv.*
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
notice, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.
now, nunc, iam.
number, numerus, ī, *m.*; multitūdō, inis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. subjv.*
obey, pāreō, ēre, pāruī, —, *w. dat.*
obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus.
occupy, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
of, *sign of gen.*; dē, *w. abl.*
often, saepe.
old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.
older, maior nātū.
on, in, *w. abl.*
one, ūnus, a, um; **one who, is** quī; **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter; **to one another**, inter sē.
only, sōlus, a, um.
opportunity, spatium, ī, *n.*
oppose, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
order to, in, ut, *w. subjv.*
order, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, īgis, *m.*
other, alius, alia, aliud; **(of two)**, alter, a, um.
ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus; oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*; *passive periphrastic conjugation* (438–9).
our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum; **our men**, nostrī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsī, ae, a.
out of, ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*
over, in, *w. abl.*; trāns, *w. acc.*; **be over**, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *w. dat.*
overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
overtake, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum.
owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
pear tree, pirus, ī, *f.*
people, populus, ī, *m.*
perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus.
perish, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

permit, permittō, ere, permīsī, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessī, concessum.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *w. dat.*
pitch (camp), pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.
place, locus, ī, *m.*; *plur.*, locī *or* loca; **in that place**, ibi; **to this place**, hūc.
place, pōnō, ere, posuī, positus; conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus; cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus.
plan, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*
plead (a cause), dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
please, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
pleasing, grātus, a, um.
pledge, obses, obsidis, *m. or f.*
plow, arō, āre, āvī, ātus.
point out, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Pompey, Pompēius, ī, *m.*
poor, miser, misera, miserum.
possess, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus.
possession, take possession of, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus; **get possession of**, potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *w. abl.*
possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, quam, *w. superl. of adj.*; **as soon as possible**, quam prīmum.
power, potestās, ātis, *f.*; imperium, ī, *n.*; vīs, *acc.*, vim.
powerful, potēns, potentis; **be very powerful**, plūrimum posse.
praise, laudō, āre, āvī, ātus.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.
prepare, parō, āre, āvī, ātus; comparō, āre, āvī, ātus.
present, be, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus.
preserve, servō, āre, āvī, ātus.
pretty, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
proceed, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum.
promise, polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum.
proper, be, oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*
protect, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus.
protection, praesidium, ī, *n.*; fidēs, eī, *f.*; **put one's self under the protection of**, in fidem venīre, *w. dat.*
proud, superbus, a, um.
provide, parō, āre, āvī, ātus; comparō, āre, āvī, ātus.
province, prōvincia, ae, *f.*
provisions, commeātus, ūs, *m.*; rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
prudence, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*
public, pūblicus, a, um.
punish, pūniō, īre, pūnīvī, pūnītus.
punishment, poena, ae, *f.*
pupil, discipulus, ī, *m.*
purpose of, for the, ad, *w. acc. of gerundive.*
pursue, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum.
put to flight, in fugam dō.

Q

queen, rēgīna, ae, *f.*
quickly, celeriter.
quickness, celeritās, ātis, *f.*

R

race (= nation), gēns, gentis, *f.*
raise, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.

rampart, vāllum, ī, *n.*
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
ravage, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus. [tum.
reach, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, pervenrear, novissimum agmen, *n.*
reason, causa, ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus; recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus.
recognize, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.
redoubt, castellum, ī, *n.*
relief, subsidium, ī, *n.*
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum; remaneō, ēre, remānsī, remānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus.
report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*
request, petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītus.
require, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
respect, vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.
rest of, reliquus, a, um.
restrain, contineō, ēre, continuī, contentus.
retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus; retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus.
retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (*refl.*); pedem referō, referre, rettulī, relātus.
return, *intr.*, redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus; revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus; *trans.* (= give back), reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus.
reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reward, praemium, ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, *m.*
right, dexter, dext[e]ra, dext[e]rum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
rock, saxum, ī, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; *as subst.*, Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, ae, *f.*
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
rouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
run away, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.

S

safe, tūtus, a, um.
sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, causā, *w. gen.*; **ut**, *w. subjv.*
sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save (= preserve), servō, āre, āvī, ātus; (= rescue), ēripiō, ere, ēripuī, ēreptus. [*def.*
say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus; inquam,
scare, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
scout, explōrātor, ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, is, *n.*
seat, sedīle, is, *n.*
second, secundus, a, um; **for the second time**, iterum.
see, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītus; quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus.

seize, occupō, **āre, āvī,** ātus ; capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
select, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, ipse, a, um (*intens.*) ; suī (*refl.*) ; **myself, yourself, ourselves,** ipse (*intens.*) ; *pers. pron.* (*refl.*).
senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missus ; **send ahead,** praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus ; **send off,** dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.
Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
set fire to, incendō, ere, incendī, incēnsus.
set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.
set over, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. acc. and dat.*
seven, septem.
seventy, septuāgintā.
severely, graviter.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
she, ea ; illa.
ship, nāvis, is, *f.*
short, brevis, e.
shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*
show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
side, latus, lateris, *n.*; **from or on all sides,** undique.
sight, cōnspectus, ūs, *m.*
sign, sīgnum, ī, *n.*
similar, similis, e.
six, sex.
size, magnitūdō, inis, *f.*
skillful, perītus, a, um.
slaughter, caedēs, is, *f.*
slave, servus, ī, *m.*
slay, occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus.
slender, gracilis, e.
slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.
small, parvus, a, um.
smooth, lēnis, e.
snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripuī, ēreptus.
so, ita ; tam (*w. adjs. and advs.*) ; **so great,** tantus, a, um ; **and so,** itaque ; **so as not,** nē, *w. subjv.*
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
sole, sōlus, a, um.
some (one), quis, quae (qua), quid (quod) ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) ; **some . . . others,** aliī . . . aliī ; **some in one direction, some in another,** aliī aliam in partem.
son, fīlius, fīlī *or* fīliī, *m.*
son-in-law, gener, generī, *m.*
soon, iam ; mox ; **as soon as,** quam prīmum.
space, spatium, ī, *n.*
speak, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus ; **speak together,** conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.
spear, hasta, ae, *f.*
speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*
spirit, animus, ī, *m.*
spoil, praeda, ae, *f.*
stand before, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.
star, stella, ae, *f.*
state, cīvitās, ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
station, conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; constituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus.
stay, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **take by storm,** expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

story, fābula, ae, *f.*
strange, aliēnus, a, um.
street, via, ae, *f.*
strength, vīs, vim, *f.*
strengthen, alō, ere, aluī, alitus *or* altus.
strive, contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
strong, validus, a, um.
struggle, contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
sturdy, validus, a, um.
such, tālis, e ; tantus, a, um.
suffer, patior, patī, passus sum ; labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, ātis, *f.*
summon, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
supplies, commeātus, ūs, *m.*; **supplies of grain**, rēs frūmentāria, *f.*
supply, cōpia, ae, *f.*
suppose, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus ; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
surpass, *tr.*, superō, āre, āvī, ātus ; *intr.*, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.
surrender, dēditiō, ōnis, *f.*
surrender, trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus ; dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, īre, circumvēnī, circumventus.
survive, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus.
sustain, sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
swift, vēlōx, vēlōcis.
swiftly, celeriter.
sword, gladius, ī, *m.*

T

table, mēnsa, ae, *f.*
take, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; **take away**, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus ; **take by storm**, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **take possession of**, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
teacher, magister, magistrī, *m.*
tell, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
temple, templum, ī, *n.*; aedēs, aedis, *f.*
ten, decem.
tender, tener, tenera, tenerum.
territory, fīnēs, fīnium, *m. plur.*
than, quam ; *abl. after comparative.*
that, *demonstr.*, is, ea, id ; ille, illa, illud ; *rel.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, in order that, so that, ut, *w. subjv.*; *after verbs of fearing*, nē, *w. subjv.*; **that not**, nē, *w. subjv.*; **would that**, utinam.
their (own), theirs, suus, a, um ; eōrum, eārum.
themselves, *see* **self.**
then, tum.
thence, inde. [*lated.*
there, ibi ; *introductory, not trans-*
therefore, itaque.
thereupon, inde.
they, iī, eae, ea ; illī, illae, illa.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus ; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
third, tertius, a, um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hoc.
thou, tū.
thousand, mīlle (*indecl.*) ; *plur.*, mīllia *or* mīlia.
three, trēs, tria ; **three hundred**, trecentī, ae, a.
through, per, *w. acc.*
throw, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus ; coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus.

thus, ita.
Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*
time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, ī, *n.*; **for a long time**, diū.
to, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; *sign of subjv. of purpose.*
to-day, hodiē.
top of, summus, a, um.
toward (s), ad, *w. acc.*
tower, turris, is, *f.*
town, oppidum, ī, *n.*
trader, mercātor, ōris, *m.*
Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*
transport, trāducō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus.
treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
trench, fossa, ae, *f.*
trial, iūdicium, ī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*
trust, fidēs, eī, *f.* [*w. dat.*
trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum,
try, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.
turn about, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus; **turn back**, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus; **turn the mind to**, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.
unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, e.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*
urge, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; **urge on**, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; **be of use to**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

van, prīmum agmen, prīmī agminis, *n.*
vassal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*
very, *adj. or adv. in superl.*; *intens.*, ipse, a, um.
view, cōnspectus, ūs, *m.*
village, vīcus, ī, *m.*
virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; **wage war upon**, bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus, *w. dat.*
wait for, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
wall, mūrus, ī, *m.*
walls, moenia, moenium, *n.*
war, bellum, ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.
waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.
watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*
way, via, ae, *f.*
we, nōs, nostrum.
weapon, tēlum, ī, *n.*; *plur.*, arma, ōrum, *n.*
wear out, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
well, bene; **well known**, nōbilis, e.
what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.
when, ubi, cum.
where, ubi.
which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid; **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum.
white, albus, a, um.

who (*rel.*), quī, quae; (*interrog.*), quis, quae.
whole, tōtus, a, um; omnis, e.
why, cūr.
wicked, malus, a, um.
wide, lātus, a, um.
wild, ferus, a, um.
will, volō, velle, voluī, —; **will not**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
willing, be, volō, velle, voluī, —; **be more willing**, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.
wine, vīnum, ī, *n.*
wing, cornū, ūs, *n.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*
wisely, prūdenter.
wish, cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus; volō, velle, voluī, —.
with, *sign of abl.*; cum, *w. abl.*; apud, *w. acc.*
withdraw, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.
within, *sign of abl. of time.*
without, sine, *w. abl.*; **be without**, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *w. abl.*
withstand, sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
woman, fēmina, ae, *f.*; mulier, mulieris, *f.*
wood, (= **forest**), silva, ae, *f.*
work, labor, ōris, *f.*; opus, operis, *n.*
work, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus.
would that, utinam, *w. subjv.*
wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*
wound, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.
wretched, miser, misera, miserum.
write, scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

Y

year, annus, ī, *m.*
yet, tamen.
you, tū, vōs.
young, iuvenis, is.
your, yours, tuus, a, um; vester, vestra, vestrum.
yourself, tū, vōs; ipse.

Z

zeal, studium, ī, *n.*

INDEX

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

Ablative, with *ab*, expressing agency, 142; of cause, 118; of comparison, 260; of manner, 148; of means or instrument, 94; of measure of difference, 267; of separation, 211; of specification, 157; of time, 131; descriptive, 302–303; ablative absolute, 315–317; with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, 337.

Accent, 20, 74, 1 and 2.

Accusative, of time and space, 245; of limit of motion, 236, 237; as subject of infinitive, 184; 329.

Adjectives, agreement, 65; demonstrative, 201; interrogative, 216, 217; possessive 292; as nouns, 203; with dative, 163.

Adverbs, formation, 279; comparison, 280.

Agency with the passive, expressed by ablative with *ab*, 142.

aliquis, 301.

Apposition, 58.

bonus, comparison, 272.

Cause, ablative of, 118.

Commands, 399.

Comparison, Lessons 43, 44; ablative of, 260; irregular, 272; of adverbs, 280.

Complementary infinitive, 184.

Compound verbs, construction, 393–394.

Concessive clauses, 386–387.

Conditional sentences, 413–421.

cum clauses, 386–387.

Dative of possession, 231; of service, 294–295; with adjectives, 163; with verbs, 342–343; with compound verbs, 393–394.

Demonstratives, 201–203.

Deponent verbs, 333–335, 503; perfect passive participle of, active in meaning, 335.

Descriptive ablative and genitive, 302–303.

domī, 235.

domus, 222, 2; 476.

eō, 234; 500.

Exceedingly, expressed by superlative, 268.

Fearing, verbs of, 384, 385.

ferō, 502.

fīō, 501.

fruor, 337.

fungor, 337.

Gender, rules of, 27, 28; 128; 223.

Genitive, descriptive, 302–303; of the whole (partitive), 251.

Gerund and Gerundive, 403–406.

hīc, 201.

humī, 235.

īdem, 189.

ille, 202.

Imperative, 398, 399.

Impersonal use of verbs, 432.

Indefinite pronouns, 300–301.

Indirect discourse, 327–330; 369–370; 427–430.

Indirect object, 58.

Indirect question, 369–370.

Infinitive, formation, 322; as subject, 183 *b*; complementary, 184; tense of, in indirect discourse, 330.

Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216.

ipse, 207.
is, 188, 191.
iste, 208.
Locative, 235.
mālō, 499.
Measure of difference, ablative of, 267.
mīlle, 243, 3.
-ne, 40.
nōlō, 499.
Numerals, 241–243.
Order of words, 82.
Participles, formation, 307; tenses, 309; use, 311; of deponents, 334; perfect passive participle, active in meaning, 335; as protasis, 311, 315, 316, 421.
Partitive genitive, 251.
Periphrastic conjugations, active, 437, 504; passive, 438, 439, 505.
Personal pronouns, 284, 285.
Place where, whither, whence, 237.
plūs, 273.
Possession, dative of, 231.
Possessive adjectives, 292–293.
possum, 274, 497.
potior, 337.
Predicate agreement, 34, 184, 3.
Pronouns, demonstrative, 201; indefinite, 300–301; interrogative, 216; personal, 284; reflexive, 286; relative, 195; agreement, 197; in indirect discourse, 428.
prōsum, 498.
Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 350–351; 363–364; by gerund or gerundive, 406; by supine, 433–435.
Quantity, 16–19.
Questions, 40; indirect, 369–370.
quī, 195.
quīdam, 301.
quis, 216; 301.
quisquam, 301.
quisque, 301.
Rather, expressed by comparative, 268.
Reflexive pronouns, 284, 286.
Relative, 195; agreement, 197; relative clause of purpose, 363–364.
Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356–358.
rūrī, 235.
Separation, ablative of, 211.
Sequence of tenses, 371–374.
Space, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245.
Subject of infinitive, 184.
Subjunctive, of purpose, 350–351; 363–364; of result, 356–358.
Substantive clauses, 378, 380; with verbs of fearing, 384–385.
sum, 496.
Supine, 433–435.
Syllables, 10–15.
Time, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245; clauses expressing time, 386–387.
Too, expressed by comparative, 268.
ūtor, 337.
Very, expressed by superlative, 268.
vēscor, 337.
Vocative, 24.
volō, 499.
Wishes, 423–425.

	R.	D	
Thur	10	9	
Fri	—		
Mon	10	9	8
Tues	10	7	
Wed	9	6	
Thur	8	8	
Fri	9	10	
Mon	8	10	
Tues	8	10	
Wed	10	9	
Thur	10	,	
Fri	50	1	
Mon	80		
Tues	80		
Wed	—		
Thur	50		
Fri	80		
Mon			
Tues			